

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Fabia Owner's Manual





6V0012720AB

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are given in this Manual.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is undertaken via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment manual carefully as well. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)



6V0012720AB

Table of Contents

Board literature	4
Notes	5
Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions	6
Abbreviations	
Safety	
Passive Safety	8
General information	8
Correct and safe seated position	9
Seat belts	12
Wearing seat belts	12
Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners	15
Airbag system	16
Description of the airbag system	16
Airbag overview	17
Deactivating airbags	20
Transporting children safely	22
Child seat	22
Fastening systems	25
Operation	
Cockpit	28
Overview	27
Instruments and warning lights	29
Instrument cluster	29
Warning lights	33
Warning icons in the display	38

Information system	43
Driver information system	43
Driving data (Multifunction display)	45
Service interval display	48
Unlocking and opening	49
Unlocking and locking	49
Anti-theft alarm system	54
Tailgate	55
Power windows	56
Mechanical windows	59
Lights and visibility	60
Lights	60
Interior lights	65
Visibility	66
Windscreen wipers and washers	67
Rear mirror	69
Seats and headrests	71
Seats and headrests	71
Seat features	73
Transporting and practical equipment	76
Useful equipment	76
Luggage compartment	84
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment	89
Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment	91
Roof rack	93
Heating and air conditioning	95
Heating, ventilation, cooling	95
Communication	100
SmartGate	100

Driving

Starting-off and driving	103
Starting and stopping the engine using the key	103
Start or stop the engine by pressing button	105
Brakes and parking	107
Manual gear shifting and pedals	109
Automatic transmission	110
Retraction and economical driving	112
Driving through water and driving off made-up roads	113
Assist systems	115
Braking and stabilisation systems	115
Parking aid	117
Cruise control system	118
Speed Limiter	120
Front Assistant	121
START-STOP	124
Fatigue detection (break recommendation)	126
Tyre pressure monitoring	127
Hitch and trailer	129
Hitch	129
Trailer	134
General Maintenance	
Care and maintenance	137
Services, modifications and technical alterations	137
Washing vehicle	140
Cleaning vehicle exterior	141
Interior care	145
Inspecting and replenishing	148
Fuel	148
Engine compartment	150
Engine oil	153

Coolant	155
Brake fluid	156
Vehicle battery	157
Wheels	161
Tyres and rims	161
Manufacturer-approved tyre variants	164
Winter use	165

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help	167
Emergency equipment	167
Reserve and temporary spare wheel	169
Changing a wheel	170
Breakdown kit	173
Jump-starting	176
Towing the vehicle	177
Remote control	179
Emergency unlocking/locking	180
Replacing windscreen wiper blades	181
Fuses and light bulbs	182
Fuses	182
Replacing bulbs	186

Technical data

Technical data	194
Vehicle data	194

Index

Board literature

You can always find these **Operating Instructions** and the **Service Plan** in the on-board instructions for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature can also include the **Infotainment operating instructions** and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Owner's Manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body versions** of the vehicle and all related **models** as well as for all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment versions** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment of your vehicle refers to your purchase contract of the vehicle. If you have any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustration purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant further development of all vehicles. Each time, therefore, any changes to the vehicle occur, the scope of delivery may change in terms of its equipment and technology. The information listed in this Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical details, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Service schedule

The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover information, warranty and service events.

Infotainment operating instructions

The Infotainment manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Move brochure

The Move brochure contains the customer service phone number, service number, and emergency numbers that exist in the various countries.

Notes

Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols

An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.



Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings.



Continuation of the module on the next page.



Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.



Trademark.



Text display in the MAXI DOT display.



Text display in the segment display.



WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life.**



CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.



For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions

Structure of the manual

The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Paragraph** (e.g. safety) - the title of the paragraph is always indicated on the lower left side
- **Main chapters** (e.g. airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated on the lower right side
 - **Chapter** (e.g. airbag overview)
 -  **Introduction to the topic** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, any necessary information applicable to the entire chapter
 - **Module** (e.g. front airbags)

Information Search

When searching for information in the operating instructions, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display

In this owner's manual, the display on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided nothing to the contrary is stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO ₂	Carbon dioxide
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
D	Rim depth
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharger and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
Wi-Fi	wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before every journey	8
Driving safety	8
Safety equipment	8

In this section, you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and the safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and their occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This particularly applies, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before every journey

 **Read and observe**  on page 8 first.

For your own safety and the safety of passengers, the following points must be observed before every ride.

- ✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ✓ Make sure that the function of the wiper and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- ✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.

- ✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels.
- ✓ Secure all items of luggage.
- ✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident.
- ✓ Close all doors and the engine compartment and luggage compartment lid.
- ✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- ✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- ✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

 **Read and observe**  on page 8 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself/herself and his/her occupants. If your driving safety is affected, you place yourself and oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must be observed.

- ✓ Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- ✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

 **Read and observe**  on page 8 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Front side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.

- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height¹⁾.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position of the driver	9
Adjusting the steering wheel position	10
Correct seated position of the front passenger	10
Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers	11
Examples of incorrect seated positions	11

! WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » [page 22, Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system.](#)
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

¹⁾ Not valid for sports seats.

Correct seated position of the driver

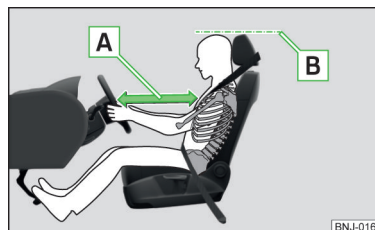


Fig. 1
The correct distance of the driver to the steering wheel / correctly adjusted head restraint

📖 Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following settings.

- ✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- ✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- ✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » [Fig. 1, Adjusting the steering wheel » page 10, Adjusting the steering wheel position.](#)
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head ¹⁾ **B** » [Fig. 1.](#)
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » [page 12, Wearing seat belts.](#)

! WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death!

! WARNING (Continued)

- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure your arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 2 Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 2.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow **2**.
- Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction **3**.

! WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked while you are driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – there is the risk of an accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, but only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position of the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head ¹⁾ **B** » Fig. 1 on page 9.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Wearing seat belts*.

Setting the seats and head restraints » page 71.

In exceptional cases, the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*.

! WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

¹⁾ Not valid for sports seats.

Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers

 **Read and observe**  on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head  » [Fig. 1 on page 9](#).
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » [page 12, Wearing seat belts](#).
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » [page 22, Transporting children safely](#).

Setting the seats and head restraints » [page 71](#).

Examples of incorrect seated positions

 **Read and observe**  on page 9 first.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seatbelts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself/herself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may lead to serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not recline the seat backrest too far.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear bench seat.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.

- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
- ✓ Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without wearing a seat belt.
- ✓ Do not sit in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Wearing seat belts

Introduction

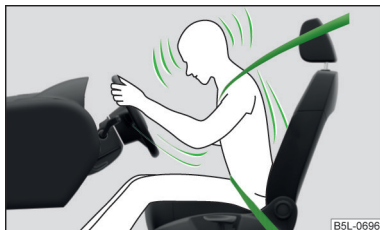


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision	13
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	14
Belt height adjustment on the front seats	15

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belts benefit greatly from the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed by the belts as much as possible.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 22.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear - there is a risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 14, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 9.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear, otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- The belt must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use a seatbelt to secure two persons (not even children). Nor may the seat belt be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or similar items, which prevent the lash-lock function of the seat from operating. A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries, as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then abruptly held firm by the belt.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 74](#).

! WARNING

- Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belts may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 147](#).
 - The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
 - Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the seat belt concerned must be replaced by a specialist garage.
 - Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

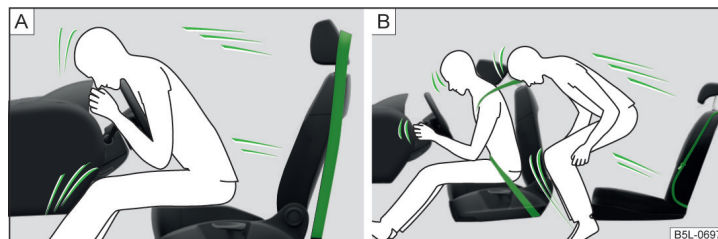


Fig. 4 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced, both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle, including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The notion that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a ton (1,000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4,800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » [Fig. 4 - A](#). In certain circumstances, you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life-threatening or even fatal injuries. ►

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened their seat belt is a danger not only to himself or herself but also to those seated in the front » Fig. 4 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

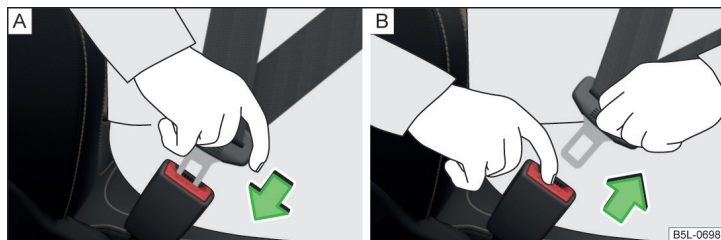


Fig. 5 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

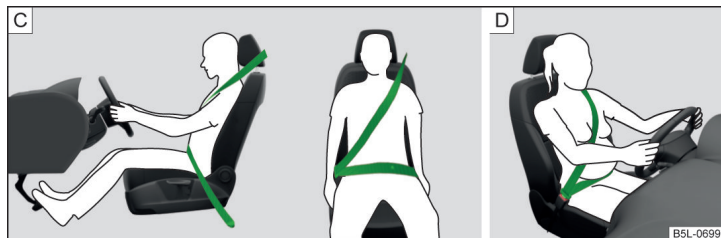


Fig. 6 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

Read and observe  on page 12 first.

Fastening

» Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint¹⁾ before fastening the seat belt » page 9.

¹⁾ Not valid for sports seats.

- » Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- » Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 5 - [A] until you hear it click into place.
- » Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not lie across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

The lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis on expectant mothers to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- » Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - [B] and the lock tongue will pop out.
- » Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing and to ensure the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt, ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

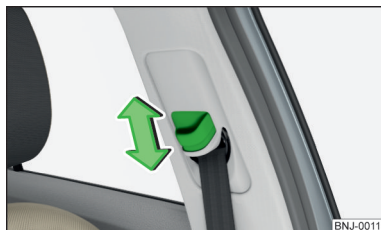


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe on page 12 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- » Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction
» Fig. 7.
- » Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	15
Belt tensioners	15

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

The seat belt can move freely when it is pulled slowly. The seat belt is locked by the inertia reel when it is pulled suddenly.

The belts also lock under full braking, under acceleration, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when it is pulled sharply, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. SKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	16
Airbag deployment	16

The airbag system as a supplement to the seat belts provides additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side collisions.

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match body size » [page 9](#), *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to tamper with individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must be replaced if an airbag has been deployed.

System description

 **Read and observe  on page 16 first.**

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the  indicator light in the instrument cluster » [page 36](#).

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists - depending on the vehicle equipment - of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » [page 17](#).
- Side airbags » [page 18](#).
- Head airbags » [page 19](#).
- Airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster » [page 36](#).
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » [page 21](#).
- Warning light for front passenger airbag deactivation in dash panel centre » [page 21](#).

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, pass on the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Take care to ensure that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

 **Read and observe  on page 16 first.**

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle roll-over. ▶

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.

- The interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position).
- The ignition is switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	17
Side airbags	18
Head airbags	19

Front airbags

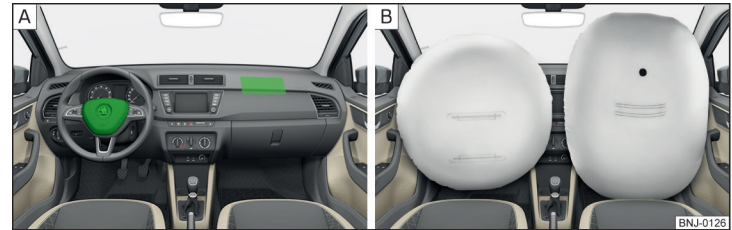


Fig. 8 Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags

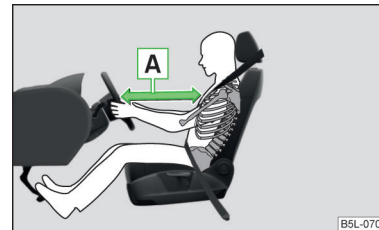


Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A .

When the front airbags » Fig. 8 - B are triggered, the belt tensioners are also activated.

The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced. ►

! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard **A** » Fig. 9. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

i Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Side airbags

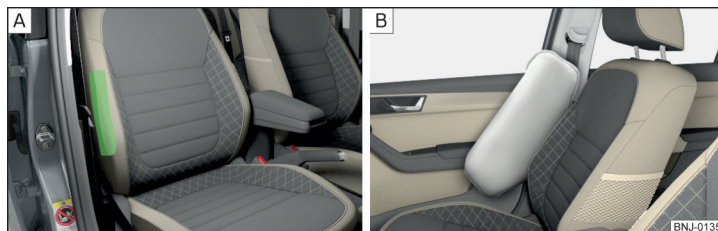


Fig. 10 Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat / gas-filled side airbag

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 10 - **A**.

The head airbag and belt tensioner on the relevant side are also automatically deployed when the side airbags » Fig. 10 - **B** are triggered.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24, *Child safety and side airbag*.

! WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » [page 22](#), *Child seat*.

! WARNING

- The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » [page 139](#), *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., which impact on the backrests of the seats, otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

i Note

In vehicles with side airbags, a label with the lettering **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.

Head airbags

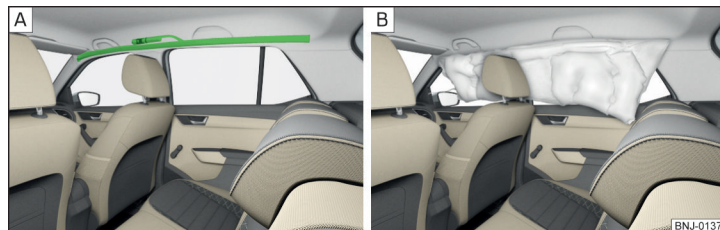


Fig. 11 Location of the head airbag / gas-filled head airbag

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » [Fig. 11 - A](#).

In the event of a **side collision**, the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

The airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar when it is deployed » [Fig. 11 - B](#).

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

! WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the fitted accessories could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

i Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags	20
Switching off the front passenger airbag	21

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should, for example, be considered only in the following cases.

- When using a child seat on the front passenger seat, in which the child has its back to the vehicle's direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to different legal regulations applying)
» [page 22, Transporting children safely.](#)
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch
» [page 21.](#)

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Service Partner to switch off any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

- The  warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

- The  warning light comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The indicator light  under the text **PASSENGERAIRBAG** » [Fig. 12 on page 21-](#)
lights up after switching on the ignition.

i Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA Service Partner will be able to inform you which airbags in your vehicle can/must be deactivated.

Switching off the front passenger airbag

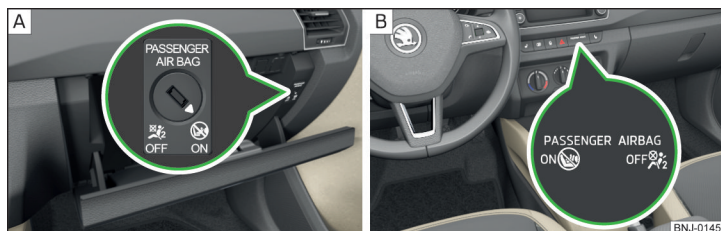


Fig. 12 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **!**.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF** » Fig. 12 - **A**.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **!**.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the warning light **OFF** in the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 12 - **B** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

When the airbag is switched off, the indicator light **OFF** illuminates continuously with the ignition on. This disappears after switching off the ignition.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **!**.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON** » Fig. 12 - **A**.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **!**.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the warning light **ON** in the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 12 - **B** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

When the airbag is switched on again, the indicator light **ON** will go out 65 seconds after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the **ON OFF** warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
 - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
 - The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	23
Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat	24
Child safety and side airbag	24
Classification of child seats	24
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	24

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Children are thus exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

The child seats are marked with a non-detachable Certification in accordance with Standard ECE-R 44: large E within a circle and below the test number.

WARNING

- National legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- You should never carry children - including babies! - on your lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle throughout the journey! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat, as they can suffer severe, or even fatal, injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries, even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are positioned properly. Care should also be taken to ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel. Further information » [page 23](#), *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » [page 72](#). After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 13
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side



Fig. 14 Front passenger sun visor / label

Read and observe **!** on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child or even death.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » **!**.
- Set the front passenger seat back as vertically as possible so that there is firm contact between the passenger seat back and the child seat back.
- Where possible, move the front passenger seat back so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat behind.

- In the case of Group 2 or 3 child seats, make sure that the deflector pulley mounted on the child seat headrest is in front of or level with the pulley on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

! WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » **page 20, Deactivating airbags.**
- **Never** use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal, injuries in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
 - On the B-column on the front passenger side » **Fig. 13.** The sticker is visible when opening the front passenger door.
 - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » **Fig. 14.**
- In the case of Group 2 or 3 child seats, make sure that the deflector pulley mounted on the child seat headrest is in front of or level with the pulley on the B-pillar on the passenger side.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched on again once the child seat, in which the child is transported with their back to the direction of travel, is no longer in use on the passenger seat.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 15 Front passenger sun visor label

Read and observe **!** on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 15.

Child safety and side airbag

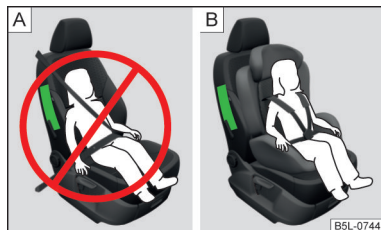


Fig. 16
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe **!** on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the area into which the side airbag will deploy » Fig. 16 - [A].

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 16 - [B].

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag - there is a risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags - there is a risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe **!** on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe **!** on page 22 first.

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U ^{a)}
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U ^{a)}

a) If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX -system	25
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX -system	25
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER -system	26

Attachment points of the **ISOFIX**-system



Fig. 17
Rear seat: **ISOFIX**

Use of child seats with the **ISOFIX**-system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the **ISOFIX**-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard. ►

ISOFIX represents a system for the fast and secure attachment of a child seat.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child in place using the **ISOFIX**-system » Fig. 17.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **ISOFIX**-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the **ISOFIX**-system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the **ISOFIX**-system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an **ISOFIX**-system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the **ISOFIX**-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg		X	IL-SU	X
3 22-36 kg		X	IL-SU	X

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a **ISOFIX**-child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat is approved for use with the **ISOFIX**-system. Note the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX**-child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the **TOP TETHER** securing belt.

X The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX**-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the **TOP TETHER**-system

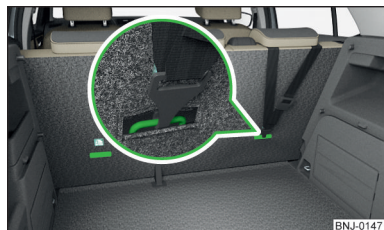


Fig. 18
Attachment points of the **TOP TETHER**-system

TOP TETHER represents a fastening system that restricts movements of the upper part of the child seat.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 18.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a hitch point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER**-system on the seats equipped with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you modify your vehicle yourself, e.g. assemble screws or other anchorage points.

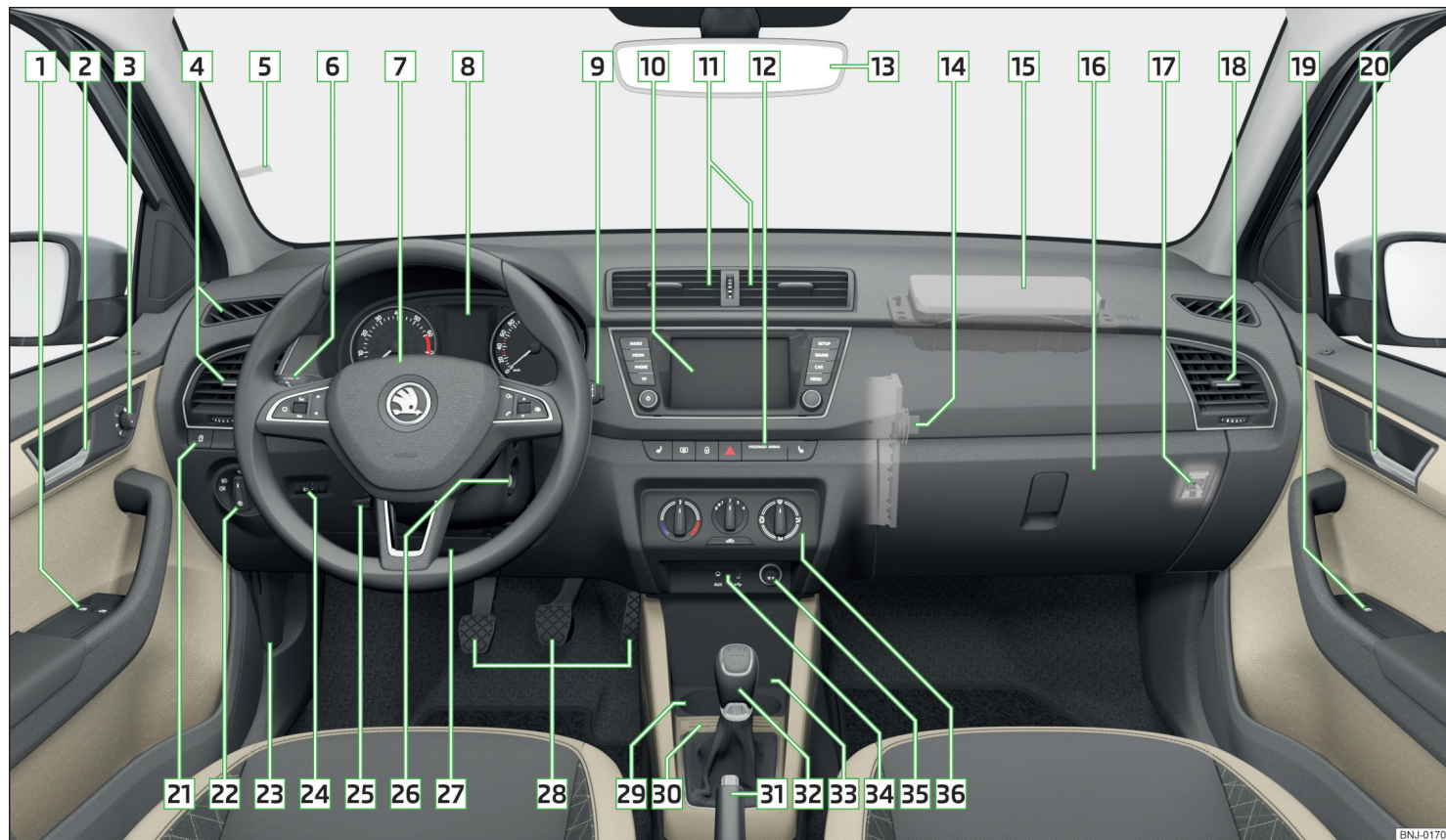


Fig. 19 Cockpit

Operation

Cockpit

Overview

1	Electrical power windows	56	14	Memory card slot (in the front passenger storage compartment) » <i>User manual Infotainment</i>	17
2	Door opening lever	51	15	Front passenger airbag	17
3	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	70	16	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	82
4	Air jet	96	17	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	21
5	Parking ticket holder	76	18	Air jet	96
6	Operating lever:		19	Power window in the front passenger door	58
	› Turning signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher	62	20	Door opening lever	51
	› Speed regulating system	118	21	Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:	
	› Speed limiter	120		› START-STOP	124
7	Steering wheel:			› Stability Control (ESC deactivation / activation of the ASR)	115
	› With horn			› Parking aid	117
	› With driver's front airbag	17		› Tyre Press. Loss Indicator	127
	› With buttons for the operation of the information system	43	22	Light switch	60
	› With buttons for the Infotainment Control » <i>Infotainment Manual</i> , chapter <i>Device Operation</i>		23	Bonnet release lever	152
8	Instrument cluster	29	24	Regulator for headlamp beam adjustment for the headlights	60
9	Operating lever:		25	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	10
	› Windscreen wiper and wash system	67	26	Ignition lock	104
	› Information system	43	27	Fuse box	183
10	Depending on equipment fitted:		28	Pedals	110
	› Storage compartment	78	29	Cup holder:	78
	› Infotainment » <i>User manual for Infotainment</i>			› with ashtray	79
11	Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel	96		› with multimedia support	80
12	Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:		30	Coin and credit card holder	77
	› Left seat heating	73	31	Handbrake lever	108
	› Rear window heater	66	32	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	› Central locking system	53		› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)	109
	› Hazard warning light system button	64		› Selector lever (automatic gearbox)	111
	› PASSENGER AIRBAG ON OFF Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag	21	33	Storage compartment	77
	› Right seat heating	73	34	USB / AUX input » <i>Infotainment Manual</i> , chapter <i>USB/AUX Inputs</i>	
13	Interior rear-view mirror	70			

35	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	➤ 12-Volt power socket	79
	➤ Cigarette lighter	78
36	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	➤ Operating controls for the heating	97
	➤ Operating controls for the air conditioning system	98
	➤ Operating controls for Climatronic	98

i Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 19 . The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	30
Revolution counter	30
Display	31
Speedometer	31
Coolant temperature gauge	31
Fuel gauge	32
Counter for distance driven	32
	33
Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery	33

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

M Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!

S COMBINED INSTRUM_WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

i Note

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 139, *Component protection*.

Overview

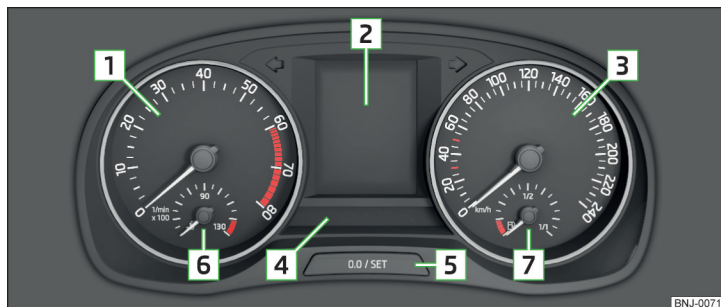


Fig. 20 Instrument cluster - Version 1

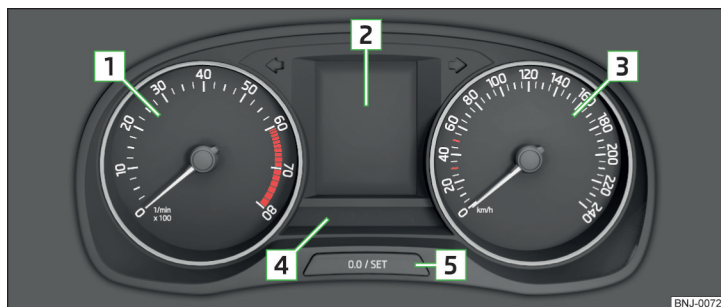


Fig. 21 Instrument cluster - Version 2

Read and observe on page 29 first.

- Engine revolutions counter » page 30
 - with warning lights » page 33
- Display » page 31
- Speedometer » page 31
 - with warning lights » page 33
- Bar with warning lights » page 33

- Button for:
 - Setting the clock » page 33
 - Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 32
 - Display charge level for the vehicle battery » page 33
 - Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 48
- Coolant temperature gauge » page 31
- Fuel gauge » page 32

Revolution counter

Read and observe on page 29 first.

The tachometer » Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 44.

CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

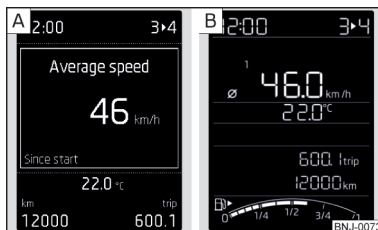


Fig. 22
Display types

Read and observe **!** on page 29 first.

Display types » Fig. 22

A MAXI DOT display

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

› Fuel gauge¹⁾ » page 32

› Distance travelled » page 32

› Time » page 33

› Warning icons » page 38

› Details of the information system » page 43

› Messages of the Auto Check Control » page 44

› Details of the service interval display » page 48

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with a starter button, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Speedometer

Read and observe **!** on page 29 first.

The speedometer **[3]** » Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 displays the current speed.

¹⁾ Applies only to the segment display.

²⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

i Note

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h²⁾. The audible warning is switched off once the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

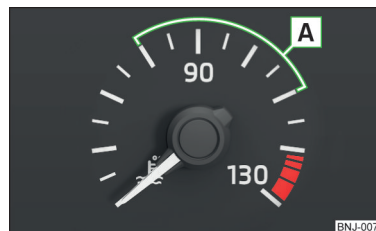


Fig. 23
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe **!** on page 29 first.

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1 » Fig. 20 on page 30.

The display » Fig. 23 provides information about the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

Vehicles with the instrument cluster - Version 2 » Fig. 21 on page 30 do not have any coolant temperature gauge. They are only provided with a high-temperature indicator » page 40, **!** Coolant.

On vehicles with the multifunction display, the coolant temperature can be shown on the display by the corresponding driving data entry being selected » page 46, *Information overview*.

Cold range

The pointer in the left of the scale indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale **A** » Fig. 23. At very high ambient temperatures or under heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

The coolant temperature is too high if the pointer reaches the red area of the scale.

Further information » page 40.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel gauge

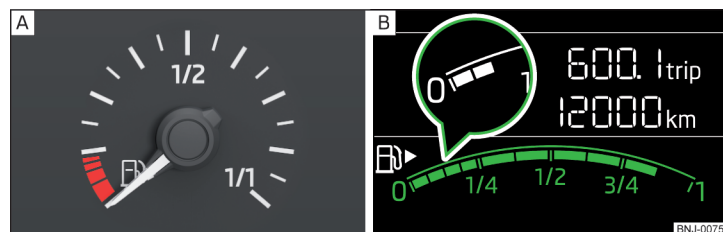


Fig. 24 Fuel gauge: Version 1/version 2

Read and observe **!** on page 29 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the fuel supply in the container.

Fuel gauge types » Fig. 24

- A** Display in the instrument cluster - Version 1
- B** In the display of the instrument cluster - Version 2

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 45 litres.

The warning light lights up when the fuel level reaches the reserve range **B** » page 37.

The reserve zone is indicated by the red area of the scale » Fig. 24 - **A** or by displaying only the last two segments of the scale » Fig. 24 - **B** in the magnifying glass.

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow **B** next to the icon **B** within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

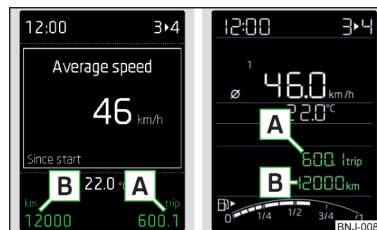


Fig. 25 Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment display

Read and observe **!** on page 29 first.

Display » Fig. 25

- A** Counter for distance travelled (trip)
- B** Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)

The daily trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 0.1 km.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

» Press and hold the **5** » Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 button briefly.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Read and observe on page 29 first.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press and hold the button » Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 until the **time** is shown.
- Release the button and the system switches to the time setting function.
- Press the button again and set the hours.
- Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
- Press the button again and set the minutes.
- Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery

Read and observe on page 29 first.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the button » Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 until **Battery status** or **BATTERY SOC** is shown in the Display.
- Release the button - the current charge level¹⁾ of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.
- Wait about 4 seconds or press the key and the system will return to the home setting.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

	Handbrake	34
	Brake system	34
	Seat belt warning light	34
	Central warning light	34

	Power Steering / steering lock (engine start push-button)	34
	Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control (ASR)	35
	Traction control system (TCS) off	35
	Anti brake system (ABS)	36
	Rear fog light	36
	Exhaust inspection system	36
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	36
	Engine performance check (petrol engine)	36
	Airbag system	36
	Tyre pressure	37
	Fuel reserve	37
	Turning signal system	37
	Trailer turn signal lights	37
	Fog lights	38
	Cruise control / speed limiter	38
	Brake pedal (automatic transmission)	38
	Main beam	38

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » [page 38](#).

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » [Fig. 20 on page 30](#) or » [Fig. 21 on page 30](#).

- Revolutions counter
- Speedometer
- Bar with warning lights

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » [page 64](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 150](#), *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

 Read and observe  on [page 34](#) first.

The warning light  **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Release the handbrake!**
-  **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

Brake system

 Read and observe  on [page 34](#) first.

If the warning light  **is illuminated**, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Brake fluid: Owner's Manual!**
-  **BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK**

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » [page 157](#), *Level check* » .

If the warning light,  together with the warning light  **is illuminated**, there is a problem with the ABS.

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - there is a risk of an accident occurring!
- If warning light  illuminates simultaneously with warning light  » [page 36](#),  *Anti brake system (ABS)*,  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on [page 34](#) first.

The warning light  **is illuminated** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten their seat belts.

The warning light  **goes out**, after the respective seat belt has been fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light  **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic warning signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  **lights up permanently**.

Central warning light

 Read and observe  on [page 34](#) first.

If the warning light  or  **lights up**, the additional information in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 38](#), *Warning icons in the display* or » [page 44](#), *Auto-check control* must be observed.

Power Steering / steering lock (engine start push-button)

 Read and observe  on [page 34](#) first.

Power steering

If the warning light  **is illuminated**, this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. ▶

If the warning light  is illuminated, this indicates a **partial failure** of the Power Steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock (engine start push-button)

As long as the warning light  flashes, the steering lock cannot be released.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Move the steering wheel!**

 **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

➤ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

If the warning light  flashes and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Steering lock: Workshop!**

 **STEERING WORKSHOP**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  flashes and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Steering lock faulty. Stop!**

 **STOP! VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY**

Park the vehicle, and  **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio etc), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light  does not go out, there is a system error. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC) / Traction Control (ASR)

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  flashes, the ESC or the ASR is just intervening at that time.

If the warning light  lights up, there is an error in the ESC or the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

 **ESC ERROR**

 **Error: Traction control**

 **ASR ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 115](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* or » [page 115](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

The  warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control system (TCS) off

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  is illuminated, the TCS is switched off.

Activating/deactivating TCS » [page 115](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Anti brake system (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  is illuminated, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: ABS**

 **ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of an accident occurring!
- If warning light  illuminates simultaneously with warning light 
» page 34,  Brake system,  do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

The warning light  lights up when the rear fog light is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  is illuminated, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  does not come on or lights up continuously.

If the warning light  begins to flash while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  illuminates, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Airbag system

 Read and observe  on page 34 first.

Fault with airbag system

If the warning light  is illuminated and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system.

 **Error: Airbag**

 **AIRBAG ERROR**

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

- The warning light  lights up for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The warning light  beneath the text **PASSENGER AIRBAG** in the centre of the dash panel lights up after the ignition is switched on » page 21, *Switching off the front passenger airbag.*

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

- The warning light  lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.
- The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.**

 **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

WARNING

If a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident! Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

The warning light  is illuminated

If the warning light  comes on while driving, it means one of the tyres has undergone a pressure change.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

- Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 162.
- Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 170 or use the repair kit » page 173.
- Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 127.

The indicator light  flashes for about 1 min. and remains lit

If the warning light  flashes for approximately 1 min. and stays on, there may be a fault in the system of tyre pressure monitoring.

- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light  flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The following reasons can also apply if the warning light  is illuminated.

- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are fitted.
- A wheel has been changed.

Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 127.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Note

The  warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fuel reserve

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

When the warning light  is illuminated, this means there is a fuel reserve of under around 7 litres left.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

 **PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ... km**

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Turning signal system

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

Either the left  or the right  warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  **flashes**, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on. ▶

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light  is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

-  **Trailer: check left turn signal!**
-  **TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT**

The trailer must be unhitched properly » [page 134](#), *Trailer, connect and disconnect*.

Fog lights

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

The warning light  illuminates when the fog lamps are operating.

Cruise control / speed limiter

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

The indicator light  illuminates, when the vehicle is being controlled by the cruise control or speed limiter.

The indicator light  flashes, if the speed set by the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

If the warning light  illuminates, operate the brake pedal.

Main beam

 **Read and observe**  on page 34 first.

The warning light  illuminates when the main beam or the headlight flasher is being operated.

Warning icons in the display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

	Automatic transmission	39
	Rear seat belt warning	39
	Alternator	39
	Coolant	40
	Engine oil pressure	40
	Engine oil level	40
	Lamp failure	41
	Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)	41
	Windscreen washer fluid level	42
	START-STOP-system	42
	Display of a low temperature	42
	Distance warning (Front Assistant)	42
	Advance warning/emergency brake (Front Assistant)	42

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 31](#).

Depending on the meaning of the warning icon, the icon  or  will also illuminate in the bar with the warning lights [4](#) » [Fig. 20 on page 30](#) or » [Fig. 21 on page 30](#).

Symbol	Meaning
	Danger
	Warning

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are repeated. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols  or  continue to be displayed without any extra messages for the driver.

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out for a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights
» page 33.

! WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » page 64. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings
» page 150, *Engine compartment*.

Automatic transmission

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

The warning icon and the corresponding message indicate a malfunction or the status of the automatic transmission.

The warning icon and the message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

The message appears only in the segment display.

Message, meaning and action	
 Gearbox faulty. Workshop!	GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP Fault in the automatic transmission. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	
 Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's Manual!	STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT Gearbox overheated. GEARBOX OVERHEATED
	
	

Message, meaning and action	
The temperature of the automatic transmission clutches is too high.  do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. Switch on the ignition and wait until the message disappears - risk of gearbox damage! The journey can be continued as soon as the warning light and the message go out. If the warning light and the message do not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.	
 Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.	GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL Fault in the automatic transmission, reverse gear cannot be engaged. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	
 Error: Transmission	GEARBOX ERROR Fault in the automatic transmission. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	

Rear seat belt warning

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

 A rear seat belt is not fastened

 A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons  or  **light up** after the ignition has been switched on.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the respective icon **lights up** briefly and indicates the current belt status.

Alternator

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

The warning icon  **lights up** if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. ►

! CAUTION

If in addition to the symbol  the symbol  lights up while driving, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

 **Read and observe ! on page 39 first.**

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Please check engine coolant! Owner's Manual!**

 **ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the coolant level
» [page 156](#).

➤ If the coolant level is too low, top up coolant » [page 156](#).

If the warning icon  **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the engine, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant is within the specified range and the warning icon  is still **lit** after switching on the ignition, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

➤ Switch off the ignition.

➤ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » [page 185](#), *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are OK and the Warning icon  **lights up** again after switching on the ignition, **do not continue driving!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Engine overheated. Stop! Owner's Manual!**

 **ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

➤ Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

➤ Switch on the ignition and wait until the coolant temperature returns to the operating range » [page 31](#).

➤ Continue your journey only after the warning icon  has disappeared.

! WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch on automatically even if the ignition is off - danger of injury!

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheater.

Engine oil pressure

 **Read and observe ! on page 39 first.**

When the warning icon is  **lit**, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Oil pressure: Stop! Owner's Manual!**

 **STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE**

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level
» [page 154](#).

➤ If the oil pressure is too low, top up the engine oil » [page 155](#).

If the oil level is within the specified range and the warning icon  turns on again after the engine is started, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

 **Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

 **Read and observe ! on page 39 first.**

Engine oil level too low

If the warning icons  and  are **lit**, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Oil level: top up oil!

S ADD OIL

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level
» page 154.

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

M Reduce oil level!

S OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level
» page 154.

Engine oil level sensor

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

M Oil sensor: Workshop!

S OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

 **Stop driving** if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current conditions. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

The warning icon  comes on if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

M Check right dipped headlight beam!

S DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon  illuminates, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » , drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon  goes out as follows.

- ✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic transmission: Position D/S).
- ✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- ✓ Engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon  goes out.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, illumination of the warning icon  does not take place and the warning light  begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Diesel particulate filter: Owner's Manual!

S DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon  lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Windscreen washer fluid level

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

If the warning icon  **comes on**, the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Top up washer fluid!**

 **TOP UP WASHER FLUID**

Top up with liquid » [page 153](#), *Windscreen washer system*.

START-STOP-system

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

The warning lights   indicate the state of the START STOP system
» [page 124](#).

Display of a low temperature

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

The indicator symbol  indicates an outside temperature below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.



Distance warning (Front Assistant)

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

If the warning icon  **lights up**, the safe distance to the vehicle ahead has been undershot.

Information on the Front Assistant system» [page 121](#).



Advance warning/emergency brake (Front Assistant)

 **Read and observe**  on page 39 first.

If the warning icon  **lights up**, the system detects a risk of collision or emergency braking has been automatically triggered.

Information on the Front Assistant system» [page 121](#).

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system	43
Outside temperature	44
Gear recommendation	44
Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning	44
Auto-check control	44
MAXI DOT display	45

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

These alerts and messages appear in display [2] of the instrument cluster
» Fig. 20 on page 30 or » Fig. 21 on page 30 (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- » Driving data (multifunction display) » page 45.
- » Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 45.
- » Service interval display » page 48.
- » Fatigue detection » page 126.
- » Selector lever positions for an automatic transmission » page 111.
- » Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 115.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

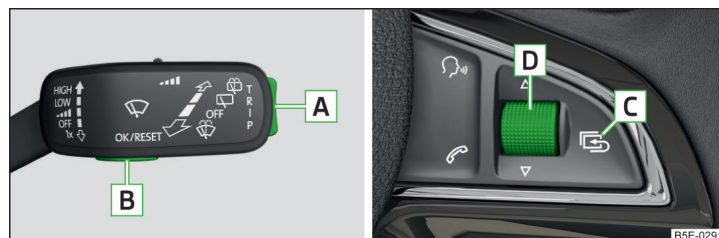


Fig. 26 Buttons/dial: the operating lever/the multifunction steering wheel

Read and observe ! on page 43 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 26.

Description of the operation

Button/ adjust- ment wheel	Action	Operation
[A]	Briefly press at the top or bottom	Select data / set data values
	Press top or bottom	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display
[B]	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
[C]	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display
[D]	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Outside temperature

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (low temperature warning) is displayed and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature when the ignition is switched on is below +4 °C, the following icon appears in the display ❄.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface. You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

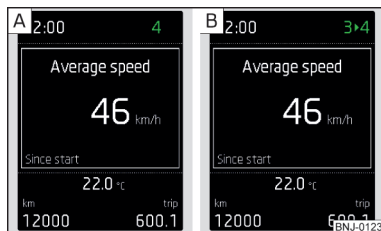


Fig. 27
Information on the selected
gear / Gear recommendation

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

Display » Fig. 27

- A** Optimal gear engaged
- B** Recommended gear

Recommended gear

Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ► and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if **3 ► 4** appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th gear.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces engine noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the service life and reliability of the engine.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Auto-check control

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and other information appear on the display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights
» page 33 or warning icons in the display » page 38.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols ⚠ or ⚡ continue to be indicated without information for the driver.

Symbol	Meaning
	Danger
	Warning

MAXI DOT display

 **Read and observe**  on page 43 first.

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, delivers information about the infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **Driving data** » page 45
- **Assist systems** » page 121, *Front Assistant*
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for infotainment*, chapter *Media (MEDIA button)*
- **Telephone** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Communication (PHONE button)*
- **Vehicle** » page 44, *Auto-check control*

Operating the MAXI DOT display » page 43, *Using the information system*.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 43, *Using the information system*.
- For vehicles with Infotainment¹⁾, the language of the MAXI DOT display can be set in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Device settings (SETUP key)*.
- For vehicles without infotainment, the language of the MAXI DOT displays can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	46
Information overview	46
Warning at excessive speeds	47

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

Individual menu items can be shown or hidden in the infotainment system » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Note

In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.

¹⁾ Not valid for infotainment Blues

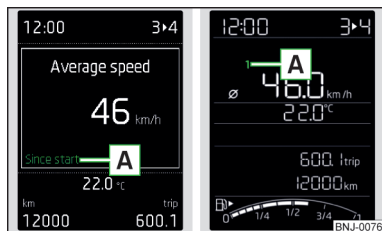


Fig. 28
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M) / Segment display (S)

Read and observe on page 45 first.

Certain driving data values (e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded in the memory.

The driving data operate using three memories.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position **A** » Fig. 28.

Since start (M) Or "1" (S)

The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) And "2" (S)

The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9,999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)

The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory

- Select the corresponding details of the travel data » page 46, *Information overview*.
- Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting

- Select the corresponding details of the travel data » page 46, *Information overview*.
- Select the desired memory.
- Press and hold to confirm the selected memory.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance driven.
- Average speed.
- Driving time

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe on page 45 first.

The overview of the driving data information (the number of items displayed is different depending on equipment).

Range

The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and with the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption¹⁾ is calculated since the last time the memory was erased.

¹⁾ The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Device settings*.

Set the memory to zero at the start of a new measurement if you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period » [page 46](#).

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Current fuel consumption

You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption¹⁾.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed²⁾.

Oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature — are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against speeding

Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns » [page 47](#).

Current driving speed

The current speed display is identical to the display on the speedometer **3** » [Fig. 20 on page 30](#) or » [Fig. 21 on page 30](#).

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

Set the memory to zero at the start of measurement to determine the average speed over a certain period » [page 46](#).

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

Reset the memory to zero if you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment » [page 46](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 9,999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time

The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » [page 46](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Coolant temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

Warning at excessive speeds

 **Read and observe  on page 45 first.**

The system allows you to set a speed limit and when this is reached, an acoustic warning signal sounds.

The following warning message is shown in the display.

M Speed ... km exceeded.

S SPEED TOO HIGH

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ()
- Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item.
- Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.

¹⁾ The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Device settings*.

²⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --.- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

- Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds. Your settings will be saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ().
- Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- +Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ().
- By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
- By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Service interval display

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval	48
Service messages	48
Resetting the service interval display	49

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

 Note

Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

There is always the option to display the remaining days and miles until the next service date in the display.

- Switch on the ignition.
 - Press the button  » *Fig. 20 on page 30* or » *Fig. 21 on page 30* and hold down until the menu item **Service** appears in the display.
 - Release the button .
- The icon  appears in the display, as well as the following message for example.

-  **Oil change in ... km** or **Oil change in ... days**
-  **OIL CHANGE IN ... DAYS** or **OIL CHANGE IN ... km**
- Press the button  and the system switches to the home setting.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol  as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

This indicator decreases in steps of 100 km or in days.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon  appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

-  **Oil change now!**
-  **OIL CHANGE NOW**
- or
-  **Inspection now!**
-  **INSPECTION NOW**
- or
-  **Oil change and inspection now!**
-  **OIL CHAN_ AND INSPECTION NOW**

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display be reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder	50
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key	50
Opening/closing the door	51
Unlocking / locking - KESSY	52
SafeLock	52
Individual settings	53
Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button	53
Child safety lock	54
Malfunctions	54

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after unlocking

- The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
- The SafeLock system is switched off.
- The warning icon in the driver door stops flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after locking

- The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked. ►

- The interior light switched by the door contact goes off.
- The SafeLock system is switched on.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle doors have been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of accident! These individuals would possibly not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!

! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) impair the function of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » [page 179](#).
- Always check that the vehicle is locked before leaving it.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

i Note

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder

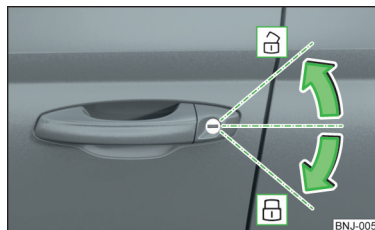


Fig. 29
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The key allows you to unlock or lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door » !.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 29

- 🔓 Unlocking the vehicle
- 🔒 Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

To unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key via the lock cylinder, first remove the cap of the lock cylinder » [page 180](#).

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key



Fig. 30
Remote control key

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 30

- 🔓 Unlocking the vehicle
- 🔒 Locking the vehicle

- ↺ Unlocking / locking the boot lid
- A** Button for folding the key in/out
- B** Warning light

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

Briefly pressing the symbol key ↺ unlocks the boot lid. After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Pressing and holding the symbol key ↺ releases the boot lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol ↺ on the remote control key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing.

You can set a lock delay » [page 56](#).

! CAUTION

- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

i Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking / locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Opening/closing the door

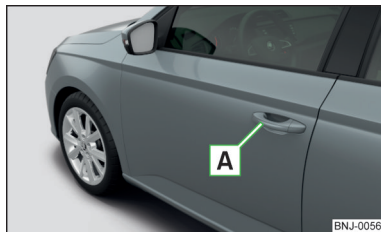


Fig. 31
Door handle

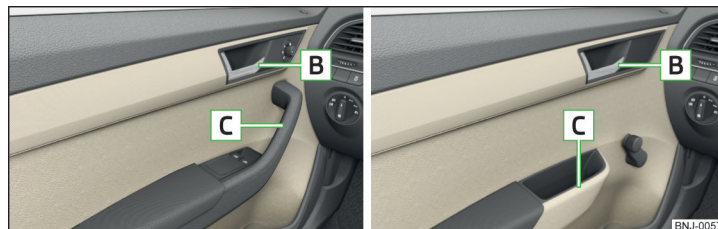


Fig. 32 Door opening lever - Variant 1 / Variant 2

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 50 first.

Opening from the outside

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Pull on door handle **A** » [Fig. 31](#) on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

- Pull on door handle **B** of the door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

- Grab the pull handle **C** and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while the vehicle is being driven – danger to life.
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing sweep – risk of injury.
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – risk of injury.
- Never drive with the doors open - danger to life!

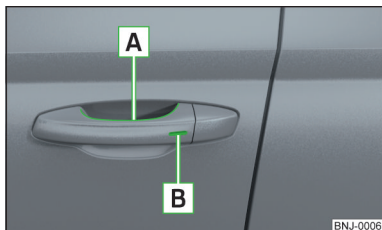


Fig. 33
Sensors in the handle of the front door

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 50 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Sensors in the handle of the front door » Fig. 33

A Unlocking sensor

B Locking sensor

Unlocking

» Grasp the door handle of the front door or cover sensor **A** » Fig. 33 with the palm of your hand. » **I**

Locking

» Touch the sensor **B** » Fig. 33 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

» Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 37 on page 56.

If the vehicle is locked via sensor **B**, it is not possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via sensor **A** - protection against accidental unlocking.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key with which the vehicle has been unlocked is left in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again. If no door is opened within approximately 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the boot lid is released (partially opened). The turn signal lights flash four times as an indication that the vehicle has been unlocked again. The luggage compartment lid **remains released** (partially open). The other doors remain locked.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Key in vehicle.

S KEY IN VEHICLE

An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, .

System fault

If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M Keyless access system faulty.

S KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

! CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.
- The vehicle cannot be locked if the ignition has not been turned off.

SafeLock

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 50 first.

The door locks are locked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot now be opened from the inside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

M Check SAFELOCK! Owner's Manual!

S CHECK SAFELOCK

Switching off

The SafeLock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- » By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- » By disabling interior monitoring » page 55, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the SafeLock system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display

The warning icon in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash regularly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the SafeLock system activated, no-one may remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *Infotainment user manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlock all doors

The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible to unlock the vehicle by pressing the central locking button Ⓢ.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button



Fig. 34
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 34 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking » Fig. 34

Ⓢ If the icon Ⓢ in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.

- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 52, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

! CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock



Fig. 35 Back door: left/right

Read and observe  and  on page 50 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety lock on and off » Fig. 35

-  Switching on
-  Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe  and  on page 50 first.

Failure of the central locking

In the event of failure of central locking, the key can be used to lock or unlock the driver's door alone. The other doors and the tailgate can be emergency locked or emergency released.

- Unlocking / locking » [page 50](#) for vehicles without remote control.
- Unlocking / locking for vehicles with remote control » [page 180](#).
- Emergency locking of the door » [page 180](#).
- Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » [page 181](#).

Displaying an error

If the warning icon in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Discharged battery in the remote control key

If the red warning light  » [Fig. 30 on page 50](#) does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key the battery is dead.

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

 **Change the key battery!**

 **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Replace the battery » [page 179](#).

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating _____ 55
Interior monitor and towing protection _____ 55

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against theft and break-in

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm

The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle » [page 55](#).
- Movement in the vehicle » [page 55](#).
- Sudden and significant voltage failure of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer » [page 134](#), *Trailer, connect and disconnect*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm

The alarm is turned off by pressing the  button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

 Read and observe  on page 55 first.

Activating

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating

The alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Interior monitor and towing protection

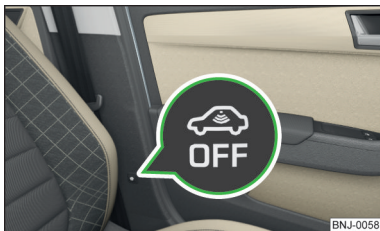


Fig. 36
Button for interior monitor and
towing protection

 Read and observe  on page 55 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating

➤ Switch off the ignition.

➤ Open the driver door.

➤ Press the symbol button  » Fig. 36 on the B column on the driver's side.

The illumination of the symbol  in the button changes from red to orange.

➤ Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION

■ The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

■ The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the SafeLock system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing	56
Automatic locking of the boot lid	56 ►

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning.
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the tailgate, as otherwise this could crack – risk of injury.
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

i Note

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing



Fig. 37 Opening / closing tailgate

Read and observe **!** on page 56 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening/closing boot lid » Fig. 37

- 1 Unlocking the door
- 2 Open flap
- 3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

! CAUTION

On vehicles with a variable loading floor, this must not be affixed by means of the hook on the frame of the boot lid when closing the boot lid » [page 91](#) - there is the risk of damage to the hook.

Automatic locking of the boot lid

Read and observe **!** on page 56 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After the activation of the delayed locking, the door can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the key symbol on the remote control key.

Power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open / close windows	57
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors	58
Force limitation	58
Operational faults	58

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. ►

! WARNING

Power windows in the driver's door and the rear doors are equipped with a force limiter (only applies to the **Variant 2**) » [page 58](#). If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » [page 143](#), *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop and open again by several centimetres. It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » [page 58](#).
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.
- Always close the windows before disconnecting the battery » [page 58](#), *Force limitation*.
- The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheater. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the over-heater protection has cooled down.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

At high speeds you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

i Note

When driving always use the existing heater, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. With the windows open, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle. In addition, wind noises can occur at certain speeds.

Open / close windows

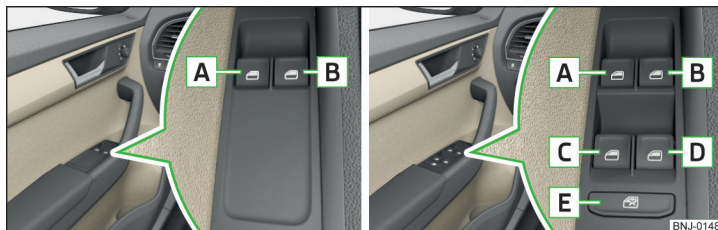


Fig. 38 Buttons for window-openers Version 1/version 2

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 57](#) first.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the front windows - **Variant 1** or the front and rear windows - **Variant 2** be operated with the door buttons » [Fig. 38](#).

Buttons for window levers

- A** Front door left
- B** Front door right
- C** Rear door, left
- D** Rear door, right
- E** Deactivation / activation of the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

In **Variant 2** » [Fig. 38](#) the **driver's window** can be automatically fully opened by pressing the button briefly until it stops. When pressed again or after withdrawing the button, the window will stop.

Closing

➤ Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately. ▶

In **Variant 2** » Fig. 38 the **driver's window** can be automatically closed completely by drawing the button to the stop. When drawn again or after pressing the button, the window will stop.

Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

➤ Press the button **E** » Fig. 38.

When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the indicator light  in the button **E** lights up.

! WARNING

If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button **E** » Fig. 38.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 39
Window winder button

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 57 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Closing

➤ Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Force limitation

Only version 2 of the power windows is equipped with the power limiter (does not apply to the passenger window).

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 57 first.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

! WARNING

- **Variant 1** of the power window » Fig. 38 on page 57 **has no** force limiter. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- **The passenger window in variant 2** of the power window » Fig. 38 on page 57 **has no** force limiter. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

Operational faults

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 57 first.

The electric window levers do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.

- » Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Mechanical windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening / closing windows _____ 59

The window can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

! WARNING

The windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » [page 143](#), *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

i Note

When driving always use the existing heater, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Opening / closing windows

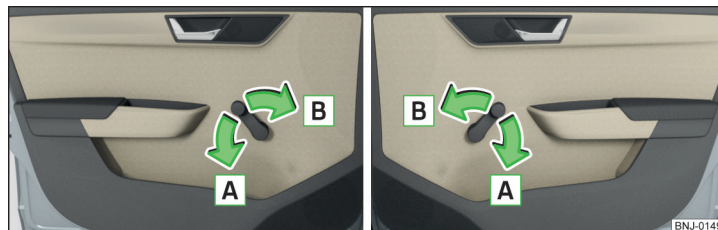


Fig. 40 Window operations: left/right

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Only one window can be operated mechanically at a time.

Opening

Turn the winder in the direction of arrow **A** » [Fig. 40](#).

Closing

Turn the winder in the direction of the arrow **B** » [Fig. 40](#).

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights	60
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	61
Turn signal and main beam	62
Automatic driving lamp control	62
Fog lights	63
Fog lights with the CORNER function	63
Rear fog light	63
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	63
Hazard warning light system	64
Parking lights	65
Driving abroad	65

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 41 on page 60. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 144, *Headlight glasses*.

! WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the parking lights on! The parking lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

i Note

- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet areas are free from condensation after a short time, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up around the edge. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the parking light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Operating the lights

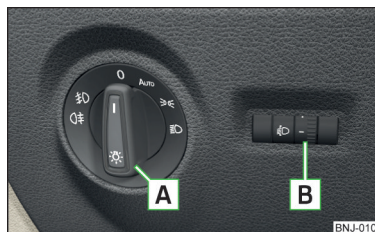


Fig. 41
Light switch and control dial for
headlight range adjustment

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch [A] » Fig. 41 can be moved to the following positions. ►

Turn switch

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on and off automatically » page 62

» Switching on the parking light or parking lights » page 65

» Switch on low beam

Pull switch

» Switch on the front fog lamp » page 63

» Switch on the rear fog light » page 63

» Headlight beam range regulation

Turning the dial **B** » Fig. 41 from the position — in 3 means the headlight beam range is gradually adjusted, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- The light switch is in position » or AUTO and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The parking light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

» Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 41 on page 60.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Infotainment user manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turn signal- and main beam lever (» Fig. 42 on page 62) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the parking lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

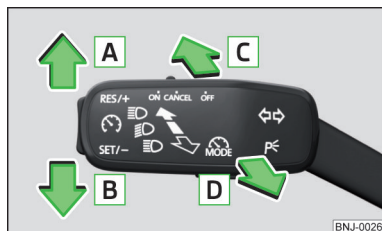


Fig. 42
Stalk: turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe **!** on page 60 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 42

- A** Switch on right turn signal
- B** Switch on left turn signal
- C** Switch on high beam
- D** Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam

The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the high beam is switched on.

Flasher

The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the headlight flasher is switched on.

Flashing

When the left turn signal switch is switched on, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right turn signal switch is switched on, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"

If you wish to flash three times only, briefly push **the stalk** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "convenience turn signal" can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 43
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe **!** on page 60 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 43, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light on/off switching is controlled by a sensor mounted under the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol  next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving-light control during rain

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 43.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position **1** or wiping - position **2** or **3** is turned on » page 68, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen. This can impair its function or reliability.

Fog lights



Fig. 44
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position , **AUTO** or  » Fig. 44.
- Pull the light switch to position .

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 33.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on the relevant side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or is travelling at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

i Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position , **AUTO** or  » Fig. 44 on page 63.
- Pull the light switch to position .

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch from setting  to the only possible setting.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse sequence.

The warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up when the rear fog light is switched on » page 33.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle. ➤

¹⁾ If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 43 on page 62.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The function is switched on (the driver's door is opened / the car is unlocked with the remote control).

The function switches on the following light.

- Parking lights
- Low beam
- Licence plate light

Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel.

Enabling / disabling and setting function

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen. This can impair its function or reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul travel.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 45
Hazard warning light system
button

📖 Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Switching on/off

- Press the  » Fig. 45 button.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

! WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic jam.
- The vehicle has to be parked on the roadside, due to a fault for example.

Parking lights

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 60 first.

The parking light is designed for temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on ⚡ the parking light

- Switch off the ignition.
- Place the control lever into position **A** or **B** as far as it can go » Fig. 42 on page 62 - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the parking lights on both sides ⚡

- Turn the light switch **A** to position ⚡ » Fig. 41 on page 60 and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

⚠ CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Driving abroad

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 60 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, the headlights must be adjusted by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Note

For more information on adjusting the headlights, consult a specialist garage.

Interior lights

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light	65
Rear interior light	66

ⓘ Note

The light turns off automatically 10 minutes after switching off the ignition or opening a door unless otherwise specified

Front interior light

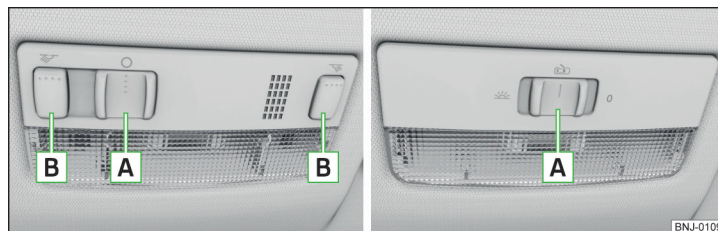


Fig. 46 Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2

Positions of the sliding light switch **A** » Fig. 46

- ☞ Switching on
- 0 Switching off
- ☞ Operating with the door contact switch

Switch for reading lamp **B** » Fig. 46

- ☞ Switching left reading lamp on/off
- ☞ Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for operating the light with the door contact switch - setting ☞

The system is turned on when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior light



Fig. 47
Interior lights at the rear

Positions of the lens of the rear light » Fig. 47

- ☞ Switching on
- ☞ Operate using the door contact switch (middle position)¹⁾
- 0 Switching off

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater	66
Sun visors in the front	67
Sun screen of the panoramic roof	67

¹⁾ In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 65.

Rear window heater



Fig. 48
Button for rear window heater

The heater for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

Button in the centre console » Fig. 48

☞ Switching the rear window heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heater only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the heater of the motor is switched off with the heater turned on and then started again within 15 minutes again, the heater is continued. The start of the time limit for the Auto Off is counted before switching off the engine already from switching on the heater.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

The heater should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

i Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 160, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Sun visors in the front

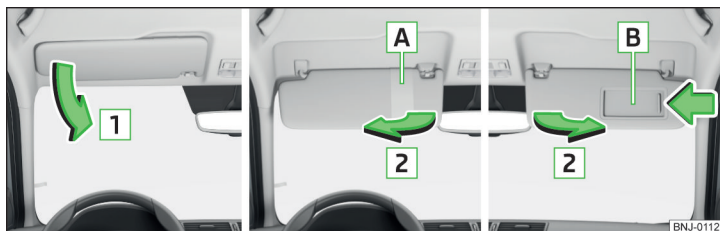


Fig. 49 Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and parking permit holder

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Operation and description of the sun shade » Fig. 49

- 1 Fold down the cover
- 2 Swivel cover towards the door
- A Parking ticket band
- B Make-up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow

! WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

i Note

A vanity mirror can be installed in either the driver's or the front passenger's sun visor.

Sun screen of the panoramic roof



Fig. 50
Open sun screen

The sunshade protects against the blazing sun.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 50.

! WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers	68
Headlight cleaning system	69

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 153, *Windscreen washer system*.

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » [page 181, Replacing windscreen wiper blades](#).
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety purposes. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

! CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully release frozen wiper blades off the windscreen.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.

i Note

- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » [page 145](#).
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

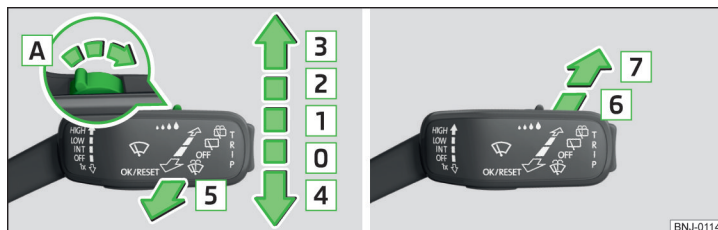


Fig. 51 Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 68 first.

Lever positions

- 0 OFF** Wipers off
- 1** Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2 LOW** Slow windscreen wiping
- 3 HIGH** Rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 tx** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » [page 181, Replacing the windscreen wiper blades](#), (spring-loaded position)
- 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-loaded position)
- 6** Rear window wiping (the wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-loaded position)
- A** Switches for setting: the desired pause between the individual wiper strokes/the speed of wiping in rain (operating lever in position **1**)

Periodic windscreen wiping

The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent regulated.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain

The wiping intervals are controlled depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system » [Operating instructions for Infotainment](#), chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Automatic wiping/washing for the windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

Automatic wiping/washing for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position [6].**

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » [page 181, Replacing the windscreen wiper blades](#).

Note

- If the operating lever is in the position [2] or [3] and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km/h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected. The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Infotainment user manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Headlight cleaning system

 **Read and observe  and  on page 68 first.**

After the ignition is switched on the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting [5] » [Fig. 51 on page 68](#)), when the low beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 144, Headlight glasses](#).

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage.

Note

The headlamp cleaning system works at an ambient temperature of about -12 °C to +39 °C.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	70
Exterior mirrors	70

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, condensation or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspherical exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Interior mirror

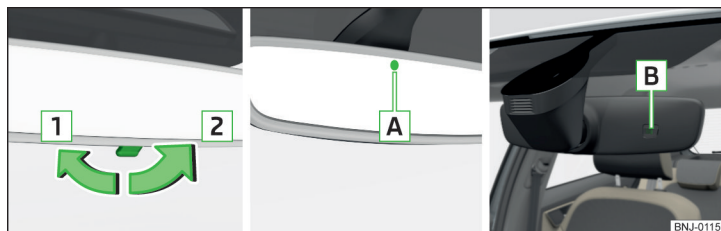


Fig. 52 Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-dimming/light sensor

Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

Mirror with manual dimming » Fig. 52

- 1 Basic position of the mirror
- 2 Mirror dimming

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 52

- A Light sensor
- B Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming

When the engine is switched off the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » **!**.

! WARNING

The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

! WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for several minutes plenty of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

! CAUTION

Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the sensors is not affected by other objects.

Exterior mirrors

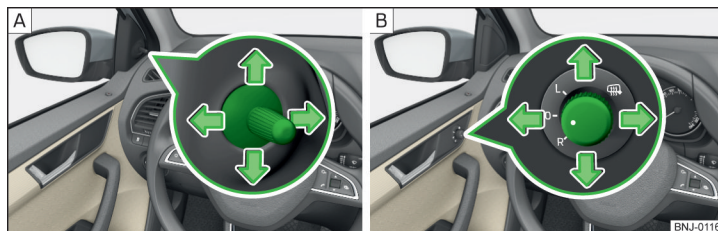


Fig. 53 Exterior mirror operation: mechanical / electrical

Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 53.

The movement of the mirror surface follows the movement of the rotary knob.

Electrically-adjustable mirrors

The knob can be moved into the following positions » Fig. 53 - . B

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror

- 0 Switch off mirror control
-  Mirror heater

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To restore it to its original position, fold back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces if the exterior mirror heater is switched on - risk of burns.

Note

- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and headrests

Seats and headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats	72
Headrests - adjusting height	72
Headrests - removing and installing	73

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following reasons.

- Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
- A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
- **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident.
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer crushing injuries as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat other than objects intended for this purpose (e.g. child safety seat) – risk of accident.

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism for the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

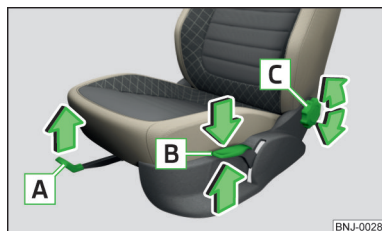


Fig. 54
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe **!** on page 71 first.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 54

- A** Adjusting a seat fore and aft
- B** Adjusting height of seat
- C** Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

Adjusting a seat fore and aft

- » Pull the lever **A** » Fig. 54 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

- » Again push or pull the lever **B** » Fig. 54 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- » Release the seat back (do not lean on).
- » Turn the dial **C** » Fig. 54 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Headrests - adjusting height

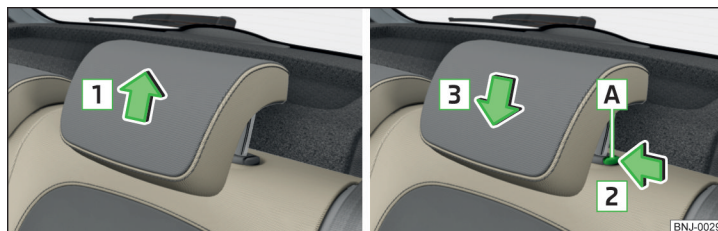


Fig. 55 Head rests: move up / move down

Read and observe **!** on page 71 first.

Adjustment of the head rest heights is the same in the front and rear.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Shift upwards

- » Push the headrest in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 55.

Move down

- » Press the locking button **A** in the direction of the arrow **2** and hold » Fig. 55.
- » Push the headrest in the direction of arrow **3**.

! WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be correctly set (may not be in the bottom position) - there is a risk of fatal injury!

i Note

- The middle rear headrest is only adjustable in two positions.
- For the sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest cannot be adjusted in height.

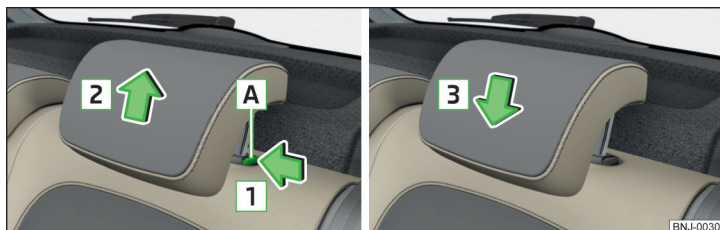


Fig. 56 Headrests: removing/installing

Read and observe  on page 71 first.

The removal and installation of headrests is the same in the front and rear. Before removal and installation of the headrests, fold the respective seat backrest forward slightly.

- Pull the headrest out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- Press the locking button **A** in the direction of arrow **1**, and pull out the headrest in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 56.
- To re-insert the headrest, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow **3** into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and adjusted correctly - there is a risk of fatal injury!

Note

For the sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be removed.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heater	73
Armrest	74

Seat backrests	74
Rear seat	75

Front seat heater



Fig. 57
Buttons for front seat heater

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The heat output can be adjusted with the ignition on.

The heater is turned on after the engine has started.

Buttons for the seat heater » Fig. 57

-  Left seat heater
-  Right seat heater

Switching on

- Press the corresponding symbol button  or  » Fig. 57.

Pressing once switches the seat heater on at its maximum level - Level 2.

Press repeatedly to reduce the intensity of the heater until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heater is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you or a passenger suffer from limited perception of pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, injury or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heater on the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heater is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

! CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heater in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heater.
 - The seats are not occupied.
 - Items are fastened to or stored on the seats e.g. child seat, bags etc.
 - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » [page 147](#).

i Note

- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to their highest intensity - level 2, they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 15 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically in order to provide sufficient electrical power for the engine control » [page 160](#), *Automatic load deactivation*.

Armrest



Fig. 58
Adjusting armrest

Setting the height

- Lift the armrest fully upwards in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 58](#) and then move it back down completely.
- Move the armrest into one of the 5 locking positions.

The armrest includes a storage compartment » [page 81](#).

Seat backrests

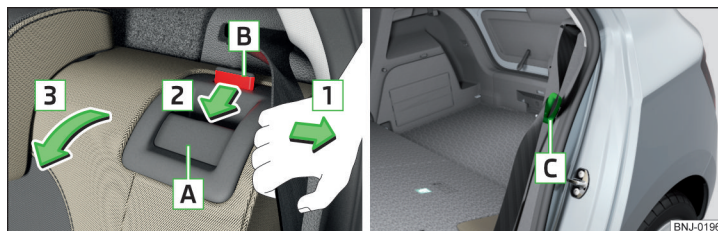


Fig. 59 Fold seat backrest forwards / standby position of the seat belt

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

Folding the seat backrest forwards

- Push the head rest into the seat backrest until it clicks into position.
- Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 59](#).
- Press the release lever **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow **3**.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Folding the seat backrest back into position

- Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 59](#).
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob **A** clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » [!1](#).
- Make sure that the red pin **B** is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. The release handles **A** must be locked audibly on both sides of the seat backrest. The red pen **B** should not be visible on any of the two sides of the seat back. ►

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.
- In occupied rear seats make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

i Note

The buckle latch of the outer seat belts **C** » Fig. 59 can be inserted into the side panel.

Rear seat

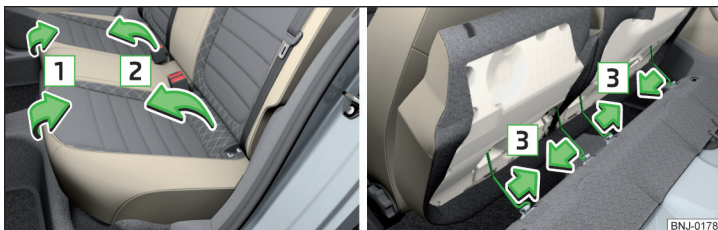


Fig. 60 Fold rear seat forward / remove split rear bench seat

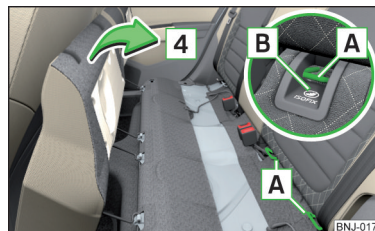


Fig. 61
Fold the rear seat back

The luggage space can be increased by folding the rear seat forward and removing it.

For vehicles with split rear seats, the parts of the rear seat can be folded forward individually and removed.

Folding forward

- Fold the rear seat in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 60.
- Fold the rear seat in the direction of arrow **2**.

Removing

- Fold the rear seat forward.
- Press the wire clips in the direction of arrow **3** » Fig. 60, so that they become detached from the holders.
- Remove the rear seat.

Inserting

- Insert the wire clips in the direction of arrow **3** » Fig. 60 and insert into the brackets.

Folding backwards

- Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 61.
- Place the rear seat on the eyelets **A**, so that the eyelets **A** engage in the recesses in the plastic caps for ISOFIX **B** » **!**.

! WARNING

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets **A** when folding forwards - this would mean the rear seat could not be secured correctly.

! CAUTION

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets **A** when being folded back - there is a risk of damaging the rear seat.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder	76
Storage compartments in the doors	77
Storage compartment on the side of front seat	77
Storage compartment in the front centre console	77
Coin and credit card holder	77
Storage compartment on the dash panel	78
Cup holders	78
Cigarette lighter	78
Ashtray	79
12-volt power outlet	79
Waste container	80
Multimedia holder	80
Storage compartment in the front arm rest	81
Glasses compartment	81
Storage compartment on the front passenger side	82
Storage compartment under the front seat	82
Clothes hook	82
Storage pockets on the front seats	83
Net pockets on the front seat rest	83
Storage compartment in the rear centre console	84

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down while you are driving (under acceleration or when cornering) and could distract you from the traffic - risk of accident.
- Make sure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell while you are driving. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder



Fig. 62
Parking permit holder

 Read and observe  on page 76 first.

The parking permit holder » Fig. 62 is designed e.g. for attaching car parking permit.

WARNING

Always **remove** permit/ticket before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartments in the doors

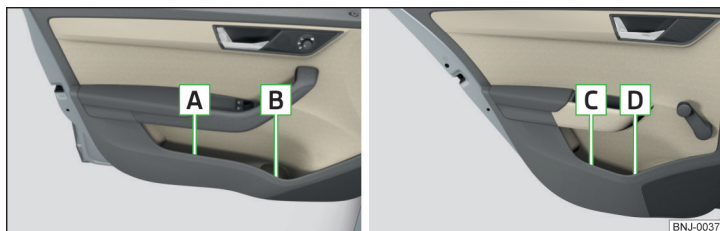


Fig. 63 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 63

- A** Storage compartment in the front doors
- B** Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 liters in the front doors
- C** Storage compartment in the rear doors
- D** Bottle compartment, max. capacity 0.5 l in the rear doors

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartments in the door » page 167.

! WARNING

Do not use the storage compartment **A** » Fig. 63 of the door pocket to store protruding objects. Otherwise, this could impair the effectiveness of the side airbag.

Storage compartment on the side of front seat

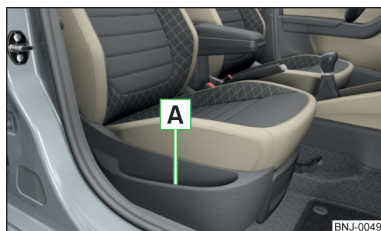


Fig. 64
Storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The storage compartment **A** » Fig. 64 is located on the side of the front seat.

Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 65
Storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 65.

Coin and credit card holder



Fig. 66
Coin and credit card holder

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Holder in the front center console » Fig. 66

- A** For coins
- B** For credit cards and other cards

Storage compartment on the dash panel



Fig. 67
Storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Some vehicles are equipped with a storage compartment in the central section of the dash panel » Fig. 67.

Cup holders



Fig. 68
Cup holder

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder » Fig. 68.

! WARNING

- Do not use cups or beakers made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. They may spill as the vehicle moves – there is a risk of scalding.
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or if the vehicle is in collision.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 69
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Operation

- Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 69.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off » **!**

! WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.

i Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12-volt socket for electrical appliances » page 79, 12-volt power outlet.

Ashtray



Fig. 70
Removing ashtray

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » **!**.

Removing/inserting

► Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 70.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

Never put flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire.

! CAUTION

Do not hold the ashtray by the cover when removing it – risk of breaking.

12-volt power outlet

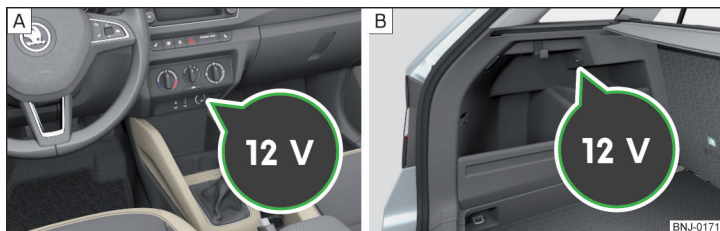


Fig. 71 12-volt power outlet: in the central part of the panel / in the luggage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

Installation locations for the 12-volt power sockets » Fig. 71

A In the central part of the dash panel

B In the luggage compartment

Use

► Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 71 - **A** or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 71 - **B**.

► Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The socket also works if the ignition is switched off » **!**.

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

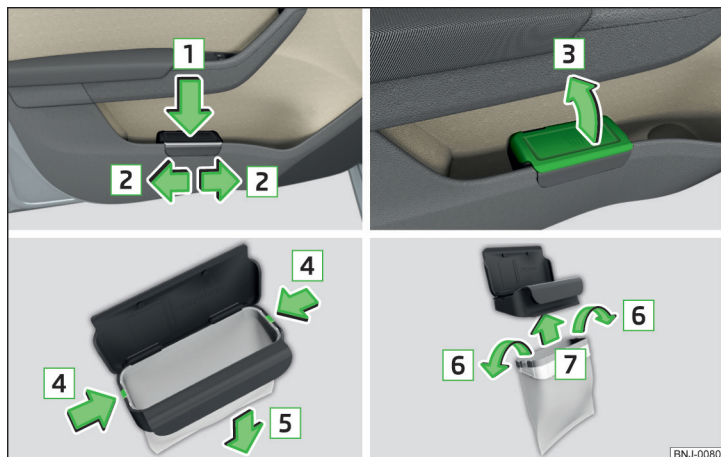


Fig. 72 Waste container: insert and move/open/replace bag

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the storage compartment in the doors » page 77.

Insert waste container

- Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
- Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 72.
- Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow **2**.

Remove the waste container

- Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** » Fig. 72.

Open / close waste container

- Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 72.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

- Remove the waste container from the slot.
- Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 72.
- Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow **5**.
- Remove the bag from the inside frame.
- Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow **6**.
- Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow **7** into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder



Fig. 73
Multimedia holder

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

You can use this multimedia holder » Fig. 73 to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the front arm rest



Fig. 74 Storage compartment / open storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Opening

- Grasp the armrests in the area **A** » Fig. 74.
- Lift the lid of the Storagebox in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- Fold the lid of the Storage box back in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 74, until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Glasses compartment

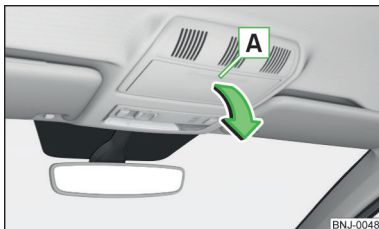


Fig. 75
Opening the glasses Storagebox

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Opening

- Press on the lid of the glasses storage compartment in area **A** » Fig. 75.

The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- Swivel the lid of the glasses storage compartment against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 75 until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting glasses, and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.
- The open compartment restricts the driver's view - risk of accidents!

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses Storagebox - they may be damaged.
- The compartment must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

storage compartment on the front passenger side

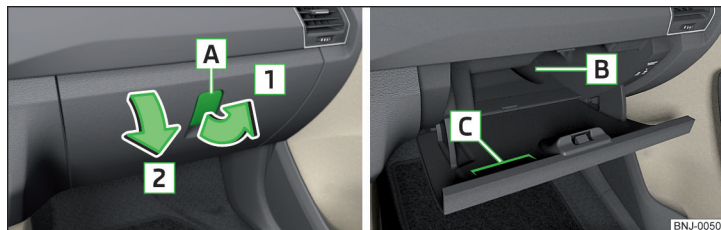


Fig. 76 Open storage compartment / interior of the storage compartment

Read and observe on page 76 first.

Storage compartment » Fig. 76

- Opening lever
- Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1 l
- Card holder

Opening

- Pull the handle to position » Fig. 76 in the direction of the arrow.
- The cover folds in the arrow direction .

Closing

- Screw in the filler cap in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 76 until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

In some vehicles, the storage compartment is equipped with a lamp that lights up when you open the storage compartment and goes off when you close it.

Storage compartment under the front seat



Fig. 77
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe on page 76 first.

Opening

- Pull the handle to position » Fig. 77 in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow .

Closing

- Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow » Fig. 77.
- Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Clothes hook

Read and observe on page 76 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the handles of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 78
Map pockets

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The Storage pockets » Fig. 78 are intended for the Storage e.g. of maps, magazines, etc.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets - risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Net pockets on the front seat rest



Fig. 79
Net pocket

Read and observe **!** on page 76 first.

The net pockets are used for storage of small and light objects, such as mobile phones and the like.

The net pockets are located on the inner sides of the front seat backrests » Fig. 79.

The maximum permissible load of the net pockets is 150 g.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the net pockets. Heavy objects are not secured adequately - risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Never put large objects, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges into the map pockets - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 80 Storage compartment: Version 1 / version 2

Read and observe on page 76 first.

The open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 80.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements	85
Fixing nets	85
Hooks	86
Storage compartments in the luggage compartment	86
Luggage compartment cover	87
Other positions of the luggage compartment cover	87
Roll-up cover	88
Storage compartments under the floor	88
Flexible storage compartment	89
Class N1 vehicles	89

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets
» page 85.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " " .

Luggage compartment light

The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – risk to life!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be shifted – risk of accident. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- Items carried in the luggage compartment must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward under sudden driving manoeuvres or braking – risk of injury.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 11.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

! CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » [page 162](#).

Fastening elements

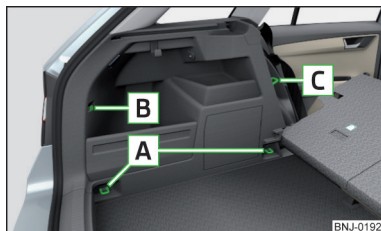


Fig. 81
Fasteners

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

Overview of the fasteners » [Fig. 81](#)

- A** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
- B** Fastening element **only** for fastening fixing nets
- C** Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets

The upper front lashing eye **C** is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **A** is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

! CAUTION

The lashing eyelets **A** cannot be used for attaching bags and nets when the variable loading floor is in the upper position » [page 89](#)¹⁾.

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with a variable loading floor.

Fixing nets

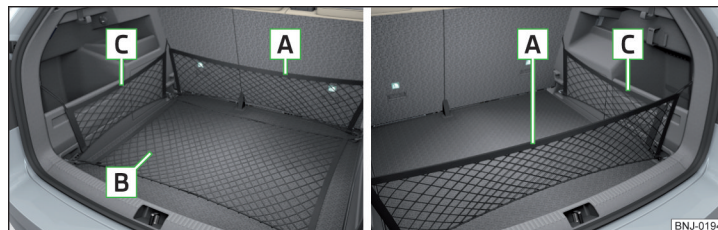


Fig. 82 Fastening examples for nets

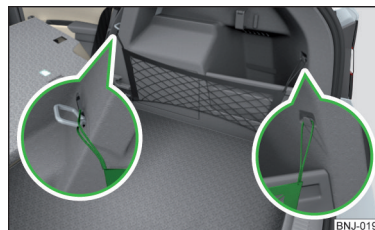


Fig. 83
Fastening vertical pocket

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 84 first.

Securing of the nets » [Fig. 82](#) and » [Fig. 83](#)

- A** Horizontal pocket
- B** Floor net
- C** Vertical pocket (only applies to some vehicles)

The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured adequately – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

- Do not place sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.
- The lashing eyelets **A** » Fig. 81 on page 85 cannot be used for attaching nets, when the variable cargo floor is in the upper position » page 89¹⁾.

Hooks



Fig. 84
Hooks

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

The hook is intended to be used to affix small items of luggage such as bags.

The hooks are located on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 84.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

! CAUTION

- Place the item of luggage suspended from a hook, if possible, in the storage compartment **B** » Fig. 85 on page 86, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.
- If an item of luggage weighing more than 2.5 kg is suspended on the hook, then we recommend removing the storage compartment cover **B** » Fig. 85 on page 86, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

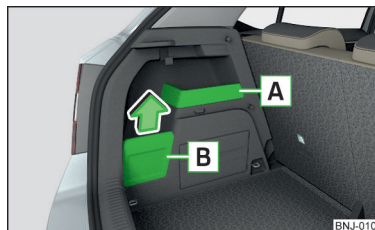


Fig. 85
Storage compartments

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 85

- A** Fixed
- B** With removable cover

Increasing the size of the boot

➤ Remove the cover of the storage compartment **B** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 85.

The removable storage compartment **A** » Fig. 85 is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg in total.

The storage compartment **B** is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.

! CAUTION

When handling the cover of the storage compartment **B**, ensure that this or the luggage compartment trim is not damaged.

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with a variable loading floor.

Luggage compartment cover

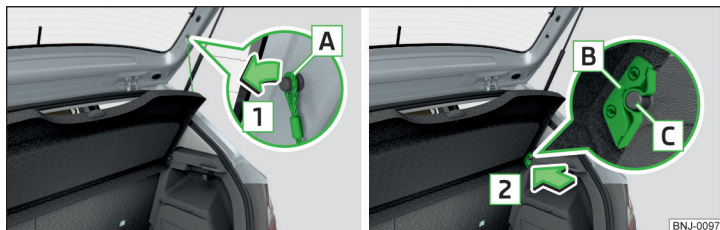


Fig. 86 Removing the boot cover

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

- Unhook the retaining straps **A** from the flap in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 86.
- Hold the cover in the upper position and press the bottom of the cover in the area of the pin **C**.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The removed cover can be stowed in two positions » Fig. 87 on page 87.

Fitting

- Position the mounts on the cover **B** onto the side trim panel via pins **C** » Fig. 86.
- Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock into the pins.
- Insert the retaining bands **A** opposite to the direction of arrow **1** on the boot lid.

The maximum permissible load of the luggage compartment cover is 1 kg.

! WARNING

No objects are to be placed on the boot lid. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

! CAUTION

■ When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled incorrectly. The following guidelines must be observed.

- The holders **B** on the cover must be resting completely on the pins **C** on the side panel » Fig. 86.
- The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
- The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the upper position.
- There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the upper position and the rear backrest.

i Note

If the support straps **A** » Fig. 86 are attached to the boot lid, then the boot cover will raise when the boot is opened.

Other positions of the luggage compartment cover

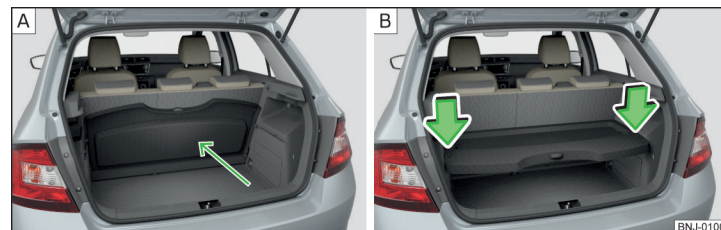


Fig. 87 Luggage compartment cover: stowed behind the rear seats / in the lower position

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

The luggage compartment cover can be placed in the following positions: » Fig. 87

- A** Behind the rear seat backrests
- B** In the lower position,

Store cover in the lower position

- Press the top of the cover in the arrow direction » Fig. 87 - **B**.

In the front area, slots **B** » Fig. 86 on page 87 on the cover must be fully engaged with the bolts on the side trim. In the back, the cover must be secured at both ends under the latching.

In the lower position, the cover is designed for storing small objects up to a weight of 2.5 kg in total.

Roll-up cover

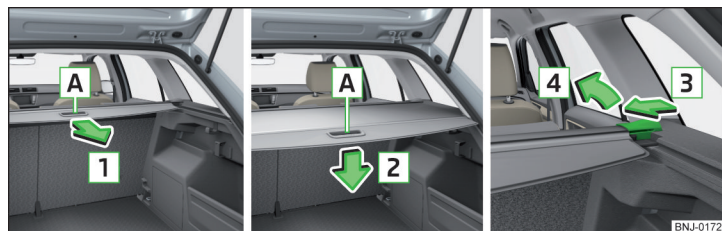


Fig. 88 Roll-up cover: pull out/roll up/take out

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

Pulling out

➤ Grasp the cover on handle **A** and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **1** until it clicks audibly into the secured position » Fig. 88.

Rolling up

➤ Push the cover in the area of handle **A** in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 88.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing

➤ The cover can be rolled up before removing.
➤ Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow **3** and remove the cover in the arrow direction **4** » Fig. 88.

Inserting

➤ First insert the cover on the left side.
➤ Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow **3** and insert the cover against arrow direction **4** » Fig. 88.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

Storage compartments under the floor

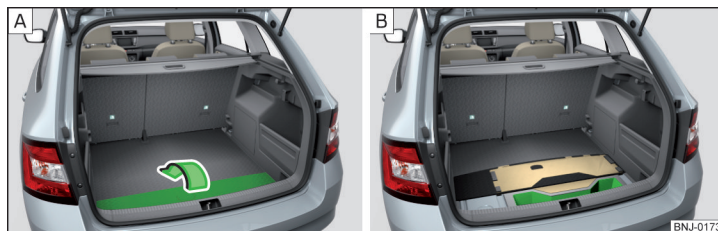


Fig. 89 Fold the floor back / storage compartment under the floor

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

The storage compartment is located under the luggage compartment floor » Fig. 89- **B**.

➤ Lift the rear portion of the floor and fold forward in the direction of arrow » Fig. 89- **A**.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

! CAUTION

- The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the storage compartment.
 - Do not store any sharp objects in the storage compartment.
 - Place the items carefully into the storage compartment.
 - Do not place pressure on any points in the storage compartment.

Flexible storage compartment



Fig. 90
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on either side of the boot
» Fig. 90.

Fitting

- » Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the boot.
- » Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing

- » Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
- » Remove the storage compartment by pulling upwards and then towards you.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 84 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting in the upper position	89
Setting in the lower position	90
Removing/inserting	90
Folding / Securing	91

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor to the lower position or remove it from the vehicle.

Setting in the upper position

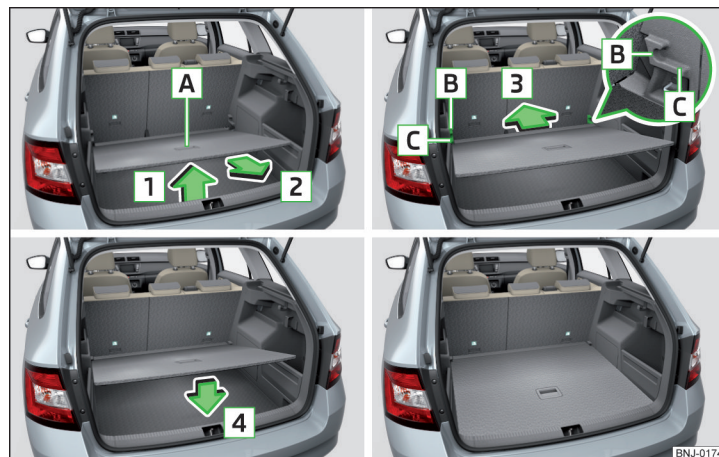


Fig. 91 Set the variable loading floor to the upper position

The variable loading floor in the lower position can be set to the upper position as follows.

- » Grasp the variable loading floor at handle **A** » Fig. 91.

- Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow **1** and move partially backwards in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Lift the variable loading floor in the front area and place on edge **C**.
- Insert the variable loading floor into slots **B** up to the stop in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Place the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow **4**.

i Note

When in the upper position, there is space for storing items underneath the variable loading floor.

Setting in the lower position

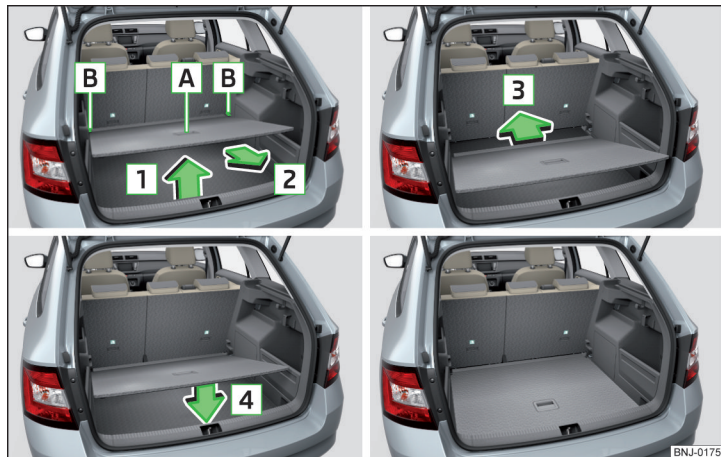


Fig. 92 Set the variable loading floor to the lower position

The variable loading floor in the upper position can be set to the lower position as follows.

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle **A** » Fig. 92.
- Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow **1** and partially move in the direction of arrow **2** until it detaches from brackets **B**.
- Place the variable loading floor onto the floor covering of the luggage compartment while tilted forward.

- Push the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow **3** up to the stop.
- Place the variable loading floor in direction of arrow **4**.

Removing/inserting

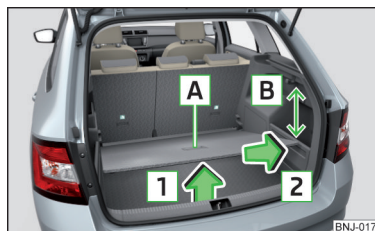


Fig. 93
Remove variable loading floor

Removing

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle **A** » Fig. 93.
- Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow **1** until its rear area is about 15 cm **B** below the edge of the foldable cover.
- Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow **2**.

Inserting

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle **A** » Fig. 93.
- Insert the variable loading floor matching the front area into the vehicle about 15 cm **B** beneath the edge of the foldable cover.
- Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position » page 89 or the lower position » page 90.

! CAUTION

- When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm **B** » Fig. 93 underneath the edge of the foldable cover must be adhered to - risk of damaging the boot lid seal.
- After removing the variable cargo floor, place it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Folding / Securing



Fig. 94 Fold up variable loading floor / secure variable loading floor

For easier handling, e. g. with the spare tyre, the variable load floor can be folded up and fastened by means of a hook on the frame of the boot lid.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions (both upper and lower) and fastened.

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle **A** » Fig. 94.
- Place the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow.
- Hook the **B** hook to the frame of the boot lid.

! WARNING

The folded-up variable cargo floor limits the driver's view to the rear.

! CAUTION

Before closing the tailgate, the variable loading floor is to be **unhooked from the frame** and set in the upper or lower position - there is a risk of damage to the hook.

Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install/remove crossmember	91
Fitting/removing the bike rack	92
Place bicycle into the carrier	93
Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt	93

Up to two bicycles can be transported in a carrier in the luggage compartment.

Maximum size of the transported bikes: 19 "frame with 26" wheels.

Before transporting, the following steps must be taken.

- Remove the roll-up cover » page 88.
- Push the head rests into the seat backrests until they click into position » page 72.
- Fold the rear seat forward » page 75.
- Fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 74.

! WARNING

When transporting bicycles, ensuring the safety of the passengers is paramount.

! CAUTION

- Take care handling the bicycle - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- The bike rack cannot be installed if the variable cargo floor is stowed in the luggage compartment.

Install/remove crossmember

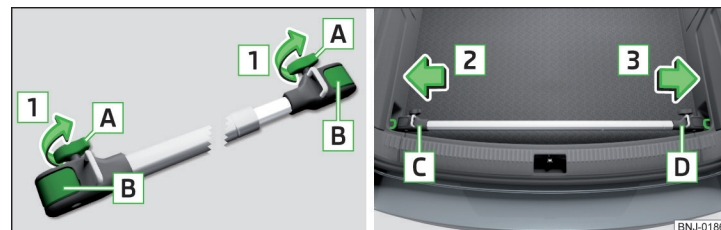


Fig. 95 Install crossmember: Loosen the screws and unlock brackets / place crossmember on the lashing eyelets

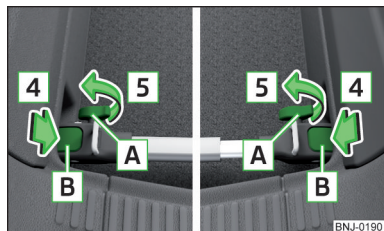


Fig. 96
Install crossmember: Tighten the screws

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 91 first.

Fitting

➤ Unscrew screws **A** » Fig. 95 in direction of arrow **1** completely and partially pull out.

The brackets **B** are unlocked.

➤ Set the crossbar so that the screws **A** are pointing forward.

➤ Place the crossmember with the fixed part **C** onto the left lashing eyelet in the direction of arrow **2**.

➤ Pull out part **D** of the cross member and place onto the right lashing eyelet in arrow direction **3**.

➤ Push in the brackets **B** » Fig. 96 in the direction of arrow **4** until they audibly click into place.

➤ Turn the screws **A** in the direction of arrow **5** up to the stop.

➤ Check how well the crossmember is fastened by pulling on it.

Removing

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

Fitting/removing the bike rack

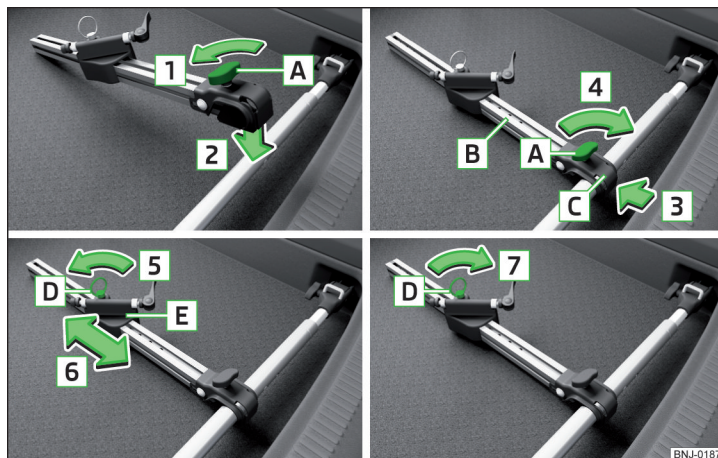


Fig. 97 Fitting the bike rack

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 91 first.

Fitting

➤ Loosen screw **A** on the bicycle rack (hereinafter only referred to as carrier) in direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 97.

➤ Place the carrier of the crossmember in the direction of arrow **2**.

➤ Hold part **B** of the carrier firmly and press on part **C** of the support in the direction of arrow **3**.

➤ Remove screw **A** in the direction of arrow **4**.

➤ Screw out screw **D** in the direction of arrow **5** and remove.

➤ Place part **E** in the direction of arrow **6**, depending on bike size, in one of the possible positions » **!**.

➤ Insert screw **D** and tighten in the direction of arrow **7**.

Removal

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

! CAUTION

The bike stowed in the rack must not touch either the boot lid or other vehicle parts - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle occurring.

Place bicycle into the carrier

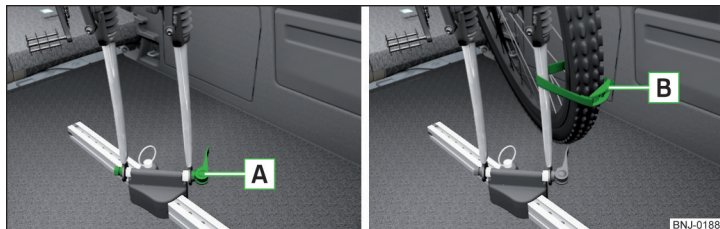


Fig. 98 Insert the front fork of the bicycle into the carrier / mounting example of the front wheel

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

- Remove the front wheel from the bike.
- Release the quick release [A] » Fig. 98 on the carrier and adjust according to the bicycle fork width.
- Place the bicycle fork on the fixing axle and tighten with the quick release [A].
- Set the left bicycle pedal towards the vehicle front to secure the front wheel more easily.
- If you want to transport two bicycles, loosen screw [A] » Fig. 97 on page 92 on the carrier and move the carrier along with attached bike to the left.

The handlebar must not touch the side window of the luggage compartment.

- Tighten screw [A] » Fig. 97 on page 92 on the support.
- Guide the boot lid gently downwards and check while doing this that there is no contact between the handlebar and the rear window.
- If necessary, the position of the sliding part [E] » Fig. 97 on page 92 can be adjusted.
- The dismantled front wheel can best be stowed between the left crank and the bicycle frame.
- Attach the front wheel with belt [B] to the front fork » Fig. 98 or to the bicycle frame.
- The second carrier is installed and the bicycle is secured in a similar way.

Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

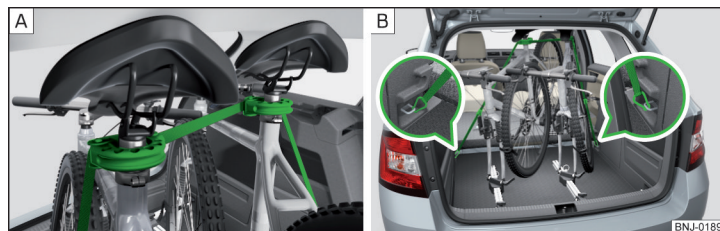


Fig. 99 Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

- In order to loosen the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.
- Position the clamp with the rubber part in the direction of travel as low down on the saddle support as possible and close it.
- When transporting two bicycles, stretch the belt » Fig. 99 - [A] between the saddles by moving the bicycles apart.
- Hook the carabiners on the ends of the belt into the lower lashing eyelets behind the rear seats » Fig. 99 - [B].
- Pull the belt through the tensioning clasps on both sides in turn.
- If necessary, you can correct the position of the bicycles in the vehicle afterwards.

Roof rack

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support _____ 94
Roof load _____ 94 ➤

! WARNING

- The items being transported on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident.
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- The fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed when handling roof racks.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

🌿 For the sake of the environment
The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

fixing points for base support



Fig. 100 Attachment points

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 94 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for base support » Fig. 100

A Front attachment points

B Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 94 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents	96
Recirculated air mode	96
Heating	97
Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)	98
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)	98
Efficient handling of the cooling system	99
Malfunctions	100

The heating and air conditioning systems ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the ignition is switched on.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate re-circulated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » [page 96](#).

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
 - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 °C.
 - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
 - Once a year, disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling system **condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air flows out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

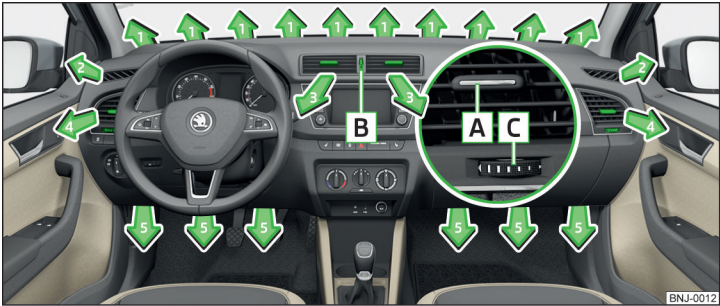


Fig. 101 Air outlet vents

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 95 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 101 and the outlets can also be opened and closed individually.

Changing the direction of air flow

- To change the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal fins upward or downward using the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 101.
- To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** to the left or to the right.

Opening

- Turn the regulator **B** upwards » Fig. 101.
- Turn the regulator **B** to the right.

Closing

- Turn the regulator **B** downwards » Fig. 101.
- Turn the regulator **B** to the left.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents » Fig. 101
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	3, 4
	4, 5

Note

To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block the air outlet vents.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 95 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting in to the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heater

To **switch** air recirculation on / off, press the symbol key

Recirculated air mode is **switched off automatically** if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The blower is switched on.
- ✓ The airflow adjuster is in position

Air conditioning (manual air conditioner)

To **switch** air recirculation on / off, press the symbol key

Recirculated air mode is **switched off automatically** if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The blower is switched on.
- ✓ The airflow adjuster is outside position .
- ✓ The temperature controller is turned to the left.

Recirculated air mode is **switched off automatically** if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The blower is switched on.
- ✓ The airflow adjuster is in position .

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

To **switch on** recirculated air mode, press the symbol key . The display shows the  icon.

To **switch off** recirculated air mode, press the symbol key  again. The  icon in the display goes out.

! WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Heating

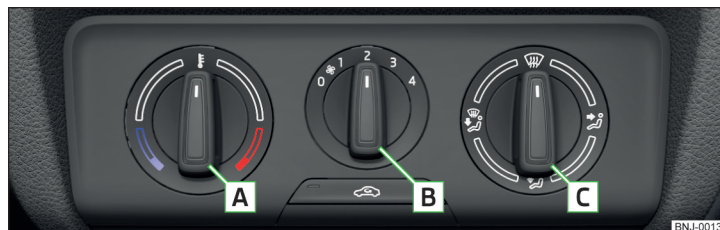


Fig. 102 Heating controls

 Read and observe  and  on page 95 first.

Individual functions can be switched off or on by turning the knob or pressing the button. When this function is switched on, the warning light in the button lights up.

Functions of the individual controls. » Fig. 102

- A** Set temperature
 -  Reduce temperature
 -  Increase temperature
- B** Set the blower speed (level 0: Fan out, stage 4: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 96
 -  Air flow to the windows
 -  Air flow to the upper body
 -  Air flow in the footwell
 -  Airflow over the windows and into the footwell
-  Switch recirculated air on/off » page 96

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

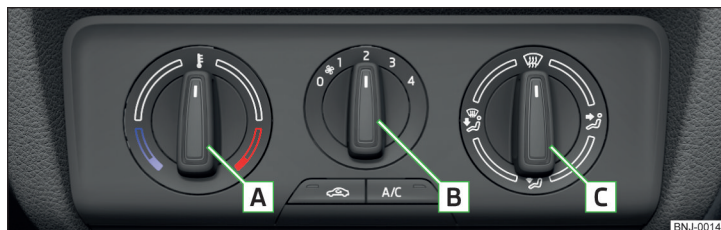


Fig. 103 Controls of the air conditioning

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 95 first.

Individual functions can be switched off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When this function is switched on, the warning light in the button lights up.

Functions of the individual controls. » Fig. 103

- A** Set temperature
 - > **!** Reduce temperature
 - > **!** Increase temperature
- B** Set the blower speed (level 0: Fan out, stage 4: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 96
 - > **!** Air flow to the windows
 - > **!** Air flow to the upper body
 - > **!** Air flow in the footwell
 - > **!** Airflow over the windows and into the footwell
- !** Switch recirculated air on/off » page 96
- A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off

Information on cooling system

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 95.

The warning light in the button **A/C** lights up after activation even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The operational readiness of the cooling system is indicated by the indicator light in the button lighting up.

If recirculated air mode is turned to position **!** when the blower is on, the cooling system is switched on. The cooling system is switched off again by turning the air distribution control out of the position **!**.

If recirculated air mode is outside position **!** when the recirculating air mode is on, the cooling system is switched on.

Note

During operation of the air conditioning, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed may occur in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 104 Controls the Climatronic

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 95 first.

Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

Individual functions can be switched off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When switched on, the corresponding icon appears in the display.

Functions of the various controls and display » Fig. 104

- 1** Set temperature
 - > **!** Reduce temperature
 - > **!** Increase temperature
- 2** Selected temperature
- 3** Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

- 4** Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on
- 5** Intensive windshield defroster switched on
- 6** Direction of air flow
- 7** Recirculated air mode activated
- 8** Cooling system activated
- 9** Set blower speed
- 10** Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)
- 11** Interior temperature sensor

MAX Switching the intensive windshield defroster on/off - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

 Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

 Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

 Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

 Switch recirculated air on/off » [page 96](#)

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The set temperature value appears in the display (pos. **2** » [Fig. 104](#)).

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you set the temperature to below +16 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you set the temperature to higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit

Press buttons **MAX** and **A/C** simultaneously and hold for about 2 seconds.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature measurement unit (pos. **3** » [Fig. 104](#)).

Controlling blower

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior- and ambient temperatures. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is indicated by the corresponding number of segments (pos. **9** » [Fig. 104](#)) in the display.

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

To **switch on** press the **AUTO** button. The display shows **AUTO** (pos. **4** » [Fig. 104](#)).

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing any of the air distribution buttons or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

! WARNING

- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

i Note

- Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor **11** » [Fig. 104](#) as this can have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic system.
- As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button **MAX**. Press the **AUTO** button once the windscreen has demisted.
- During operation of the Climatronic, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed can occur in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

 **Read and observe** **!** and **!** on page 95 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on if the windows are open. ▶

 **For the sake of the environment**
Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » [page 113](#).

Malfunctions

 **Read and observe**  and  on [page 95](#) first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be that:

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 183](#).
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » [page 31](#).

If you are not able to resolve the fault yourself, or if the cooling output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and obtain assistance from a specialist garage.

Communication

SmartGate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connection with SmartGate	101
Smart Gate website	101
Password Management	101

SmartGate is a system which transmits vehicle data via Wi-Fi.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a connected communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook)¹⁾ offer the possibility to further process the received data.

Available applications and further information can be found on the ŠKODA website..

WARNING

- The national legal regulations for using mobile communication devices in a vehicle must be observed.
- Do not fit the equipment or mounts to be connected onto airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a connected device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

- SmartGate provides the means of accessing the travel data for some software applications installed in your phone/tablet. Correct communication within the SmartGate system requires the proper functioning of your phone/tablet or of the software applications installed in the phone/tablet.
- It should also be noted that not every phone/tablet is compatible with the SmartGate system.

¹⁾ The applications support communication devices with the Android operating system version 4.0.x and later and iOS 7.xx and higher.

- For information about the compatibility of phones/tablets, please refer to the websites at www.skoda-auto.com.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the phones/tablets and the applications on them.

Connection with SmartGate

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 100 first.

For a successful connection the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.

Connect

- Can enable the connected device to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see operating instructions for the connected device).
- In the found networks menu, select the connection to the "SmartGate_ ... "network".
- Enter the password (the password is preset at the factory to the complete Vehicle Identification Number - enter capital letters).

Disconnecting the connection

The connection to SmartGate can be ended in the following ways.

- By disconnecting the connected device from SmartGate.
- By turning off the Wi-Fi in the connected device.
- By switching off the ignition and removing the key for more than 5 s (for vehicles with starter button - by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

Automatic connection

The connection to SmartGate is automatically restored under the following conditions.

- ✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection problems

If the connection fails, check the following points.

- Are the conditions for a successful connection fulfilled?
- Is Smart Gate available in the list of available Wi-Fi networks?
- Has the password required for the connection check been entered?
- Is the password is required for the connection check correct?
- Is the device to be connected still connected to another Wi-Fi network?

If the above items are ok but the connection still fails, contact a ŠKODA partner.

Smart Gate website

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 100 first.

There is a special website for the SmartGate system.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the connected device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

This website contains information about the vehicle, the Wi-Fi connection and SmartGate.

In the Configuration area the Wi-Fi connection settings can be adjusted.

Save the setting changes

The setting changes are only applied after performing the following steps.

- The changes are saved by pressing the "Save" button.
- SmartGate is restarted by pressing the "Reboot" button.

Password Management

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 100 first.

Password management can be done in the connected device on the SmartGate website» [page 101](#), *Smart Gate website*.

The changes are applied after saving and restarting SmartGate » [page 101](#), *Save the setting changes*.

¹⁾ The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position

Change password

➤ Enter a new password in the Configuration area in menu option WPA / WPA2 key.

The password must be 8-17 characters without diacritics or special characters (e.g. -, /, etc.).

Connection option without entering a password

➤ In the Configuration area set the value Open in the menu item Security .

Forgot password

If you have forgotten your password, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialized workshop.

Driving

Starting-off and driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer	103
Lock / unlock steering lock	103
Turn ignition on / off and start the engine	104
Stopping the engine	104

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » [page 104](#), *Turn ignition on / off and start the engine.*
 - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » [page 103](#) - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » [page 109](#), *Parking*. Otherwise the steering wheel could lock – risk of accident.
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, children for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - risk of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a halt – risk of accident.

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - risk of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. There is a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 176](#).

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

 Read and observe  and  on [page 103](#) first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobilizer is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if an unauthorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Immobilizer active.**

 **IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE**

Lock / unlock steering lock

 Read and observe  and  on [page 103](#) first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Withdraw the ignition key.
- Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

- Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- Switch on the ignition » [page 104](#).

The vehicle is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly to unlock the steering lock.

Turn ignition on / off and start the engine



Fig. 105
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 105

- 1** Ignition switched off, engine switched off
- 2** Ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off

➤ Turn key to position **2**.

The ignition is switched on.

➤ Turn key to position **1**.

The ignition is switched off.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear lever to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
- Turn the key into position **3** as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
- Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **2**.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **1**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

For vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light  goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Press the clutch to start.

S PRESS CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Depress the brake to start.

S APPLY BRAKE

Note

- The engine running noises may at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

➤ Stop the vehicle » page 109, *Parking*.

➤ Turn key to position **1** » Fig. 105 on page 104.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

The radiator fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

Start or stop the engine by pressing button

Introduction



Fig. 106
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Lock / unlock the steering lock	105
Switch ignition on / off	106
Starting the engine	106
Switching off the engine	106
Problems with the engine start	107

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped with the starter button » Fig. 106.

The key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, start the vehicle and drive.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons such as children could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine -risk of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a halt - risk of accident.

! WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - risk of poisoning and death!

! CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 176.

i Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine reaches its operating temperature faster this way.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 106.

Lock / unlock the steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 105 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

! WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - risk of accident!

Switch ignition on / off

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

➤ Press the button » [Fig. 106 on page 105](#) briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual transmission**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Ignition on!

IGNITION STILL ON

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
- Press the starter button » [Fig. 106 on page 105](#) briefly – the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light lights up after pressing the button. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe and on page 105 first.

Switching off

- Stop the vehicle » [page 109, Parking](#).
- Press the button » [Fig. 106 on page 105](#) briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shutdown

If necessary and in exceptional cases, the engine may even be turned off while driving.

- Press the starter button » [Fig. 106 on page 105](#) for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

The radiator fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

Problems with the engine start



Fig. 107
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 105 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified

If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Key not recognised. Owner's Manual!

M Key not found.

S NO KEY

The reasons for this may be.

- The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
- The key is malfunctioning
- There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 107.

System fault

If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster, there is a system malfunction.

M Keyless access system faulty.

S KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 107.

! CAUTION

The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

i Note

- When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 107.
- If engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking	107
Handbrake	108
Parking	109

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident.
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended, in the vehicle. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident.
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 113.

! CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 107 first.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted. ►

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between services.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » **!**

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » **!**

Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Fault in the brake system

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, there may be a fault in the brake system.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know how great the damage is.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The fluid level is monitored electronically » [page 34](#), **!** *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake



Fig. 108
Handbrake

! **!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 107 first.

The handbrake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply

➤ Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Undoing

- Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **while** pushing in the locking button » [Fig. 108](#).
- Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light **!** lights up when the handbrake is applied provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Release the handbrake!**

S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds. ►

! WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 107 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- On vehicles with **Automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage the first gear or reverse gear.
- Release the brake pedal.

! WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear shifting and pedals

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing	109
Pedals	110

Manual gear changing

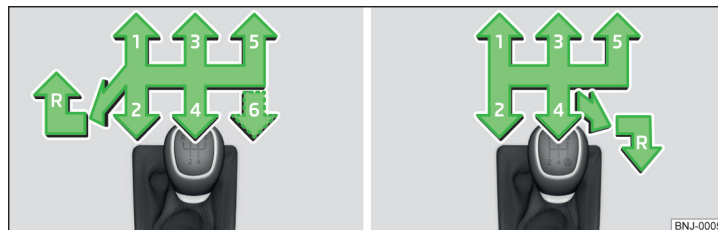


Fig. 109 Shift pattern of the transmission Version 1/version 2

The individual gear positions are shown on the gear shift » Fig. 109.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 44.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engage reverse gear - Version 1

- Stop the vehicle.
- The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
- Move the shift lever to the idle position, switch and press down.
- Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into the **R** position » Fig. 109.

Engage reverse gear - Version 2

- Stop the vehicle.
- The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
- Move the shift lever to the idle position, switch and press down.
- Move the shift lever fully to the right and then backwards to position **R**.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to damage of clutch parts.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's foot well, only a foot mat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of SKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two the two required attachment points.

WARNING

- No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – there is a risk of obstructing or restriction pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever	111
Selector lever lock	111
Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)	112
Starting-off and driving	112

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes for the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Never accelerate when the mode for moving forward is set with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never shift the selector lever to **R** or **P** modes when driving – there is a risk of an accident.
- The vehicle must be held on the brake pedal in **D**, **S** or **R** modes if the vehicle is halted and the engine is running. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to be put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 °C, the selector lever, when starting, must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P** (valid only for certain countries).

Modes and use of selector lever



Fig. 110 Selection lever / lock button / display

Read and observe  and  on page 110 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 110.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 110.

- Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

- Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

- Neutral

Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

- mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)

The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-loaded position  » Fig. 110.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode.

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at **higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe  and  on page 110 first.

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning  light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

➤ Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of  » Fig. 110 on page 111.

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 181.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)

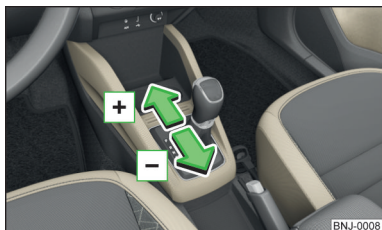


Fig. 111
Selector lever

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 110 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while halted and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 110 on page 111 display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 44.

Switching to manual shifting

➤ Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

Shifting up gears

➤ Press the selector lever forwards **+** » Fig. 111.

Shifting down gears

➤ Press the selector lever backwards **-** » Fig. 111.

Note

- It may be advantageous to use manual gear shifting when driving downhill, for example. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence brake wear » page 107.
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 110 first.

Starting off

- Start the engine.
- Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the lock button in the direction of **1** » Fig. 110 on page 111 and hold.
- Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 111 and then release the lock button.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)

- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve maximum acceleration by your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

! WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – there is a risk of an accident.

Retraction and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving in _____ 113
Tips for economical driving _____ 113 ►

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1,000 km, we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and not to use a trailer.

In the range of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres**, the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Change gear in an energy saving and timely manner

Observe the recommended gear » [page 44](#).

Avoid full throttle and high speeds

Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances

When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained

Further information » [page 162](#).

Avoid unnecessary ballast

Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity

Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) should only be turned on for as long as necessary.

Driving through water and driving off made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving through water _____ 114

Driving off paved roads _____ 114

WARNING

Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » [page 107](#), *Information for braking*. For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

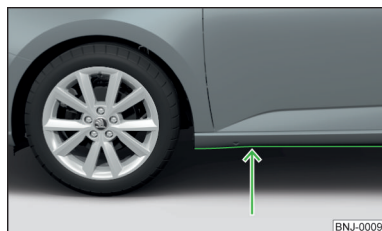


Fig. 112
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

 **Read and observe**  on page 113 first.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

➤ Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower sill » Fig. 112.

➤ Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.

➤ Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a risk of serious damage to the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmissions may be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

 **Read and observe**  on page 113 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 194, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING

Drive particularly considerably and pro-actively when not on paved roads.

- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the base of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	115
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	115
Traction Control System (TCS)	115
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)	116
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	116
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	116
Multi-collision brake (MCB)	116

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » [page 33, Warning lights](#).

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 Read and observe  on page 115 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 115 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not pump the brakes or lift off the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)



Fig. 113
System button: Activating/deactivating TCS

 Read and observe  on page 115 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating TCS

The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.

» In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

» By briefly pressing the symbol key  » [Fig. 113](#).

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light  illuminates and the display shows the following message.

 **Traction control (TCS) deactivated.**

 **ASR OFF**

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns  and the display shows the following message.

 **Traction control (TCS) activated.**

 **ASR ON**

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

 **Read and observe  on page 115 first.**

EDL

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS

XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

 **Read and observe  on page 115 first.**

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very rapid depression of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

 **Read and observe  on page 115 first.**

HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake when pulling away on a gradient.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

HHC is active on slopes of >5 % when the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes pulling away forwards or in reverse.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

 **Read and observe  on page 115 first.**

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	117
Activation/deactivation	118
Automatic system activation when moving forward	118

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 115 on page 117.

! WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to be not recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 115 on page 117 clean, snow- and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.) system function may be limited "incorrect obstacle detection".
- Additionally installed accessories such as e.g. bicycle carriers can impair the system function.

Function

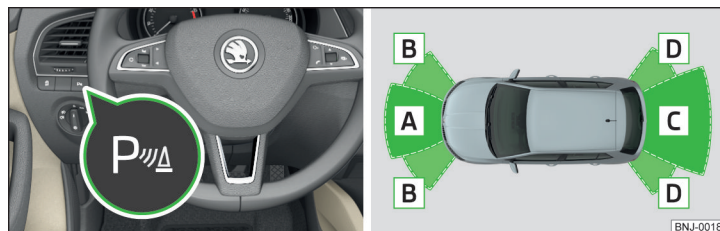


Fig. 114 System key (Version 2) / Sampled areas and range of sensors

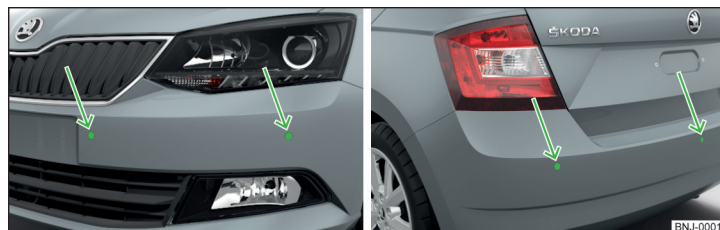


Fig. 115 Fitting the ultrasonic sensors: front/rear

Read and observe ! and ! on page 117 first.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 114.

- Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Version 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 114	Version 1 (3 sensors)	Version 2 (7 sensors)
A	-	120
B	-	60
C	160	160
D	60	60

Acoustic signals and display

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display, see » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only system areas **A** and **B** » Fig. 114 are active when towing a trailer.

Note

The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 117 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button **P** » Fig. 114 on page 117.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol **P** in the button lights up).

On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **Version 2**, the system is deactivated by pressing the symbol button **P** or automatically at a speed over 10 km/h (the symbol **P** in the button goes out).

Displaying an error

If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol **P** flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

The system can only be activated via the symbol button **P** at a speed of below 10 km/hr.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 116
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 117 first.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.

- » The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
- » The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 116.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Cruise control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning	119
Operating Description	119

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING

- The CCS only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Functioning

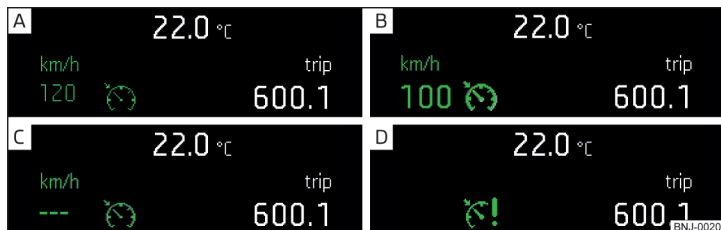


Fig. 117 Maxi DOT display: Examples of status displays the CCS

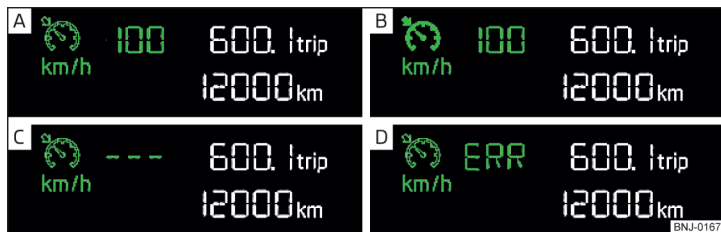


Fig. 118 Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

GRA status displays » Fig. 117, » Fig. 118

- A Speed set, but control is inactive.
- B Control is active.

- C No speed set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/ S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

! WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

Operating Description

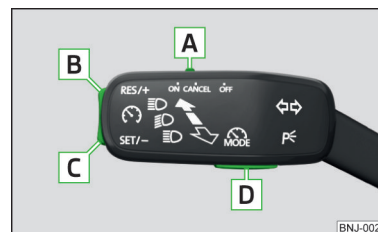


Fig. 119 Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 119

- A **OFF** Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- ON** Activate CCS (control deactivated)
- B **RES/+** Take control again^{a)} / Increase speed
- C **SET/-** Start control / reduce speed
- D **MODE** Switching between GRA and Speed Limiter » page 120

^{a)} If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

At the start of the regulation the GRA regulates the vehicle to the current speed, and this speed is shown on the instrument cluster display. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- > The brake pedal is operated.
- > When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- > Through an airbag deployment.
- > The key **MODE** is actuated.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being enabled unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

i Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the **MODE** button during the regulation this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed Limiter

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	120
Operation description	121

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit. This limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully. The condition in which the Speed Limiter monitors a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

! WARNING

- The Speed Limiter only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Operation

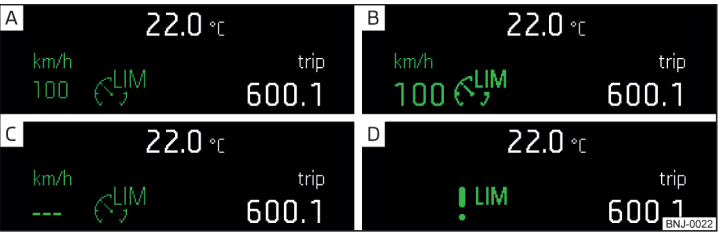


Fig. 120 Maxi DOT display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays.



Fig. 121 Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays.

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 120 first.

Status display of the Speed Limiter» Fig. 120, » Fig. 121

- A** Speed limit set, but regulation is inactive.
- B** Control is active.
- C** No speed limit set.
- D** System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

- ✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 30 km/h.

Operation description

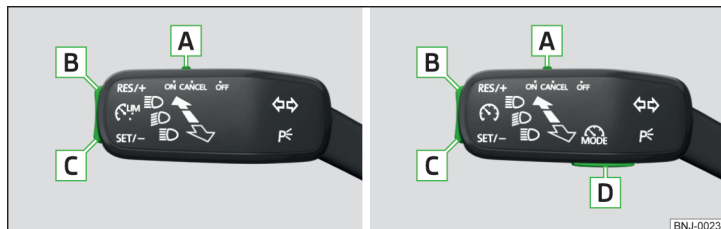


Fig. 122 Operating elements of the Speed Limiter: Vehicle Speed Limiter / vehicle with GRA and Speed Limiter

Read and observe **!** on page 120 first.

Overview of the control elements of the Speed Limiter » Fig. 122

- A OFF** Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- ON** Activate Speed Limiter (regulation deactivated)
For vehicles with GRA and Speed Limiter the GRA is activated by the switch in the **ON** position by being adjusted. The activation of the Speed Limiter occurs only after pressing the button **MODE**.
- B RES/+** Take control again ^{a)}/ Increase speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
- C SET/-** Start regulation / reduce speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
- D MODE** switch between GRA » page 118 and Speed Limiter

^{a)} If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

At the start of the regulation, the current speed is set as the speed limit and displayed in the instrument cluster display. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation

If exceeding the speed limit is required during the regulation, for example when overtaking, then the accelerator pedal is to be fully pressed.

When exceeding the speed limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light  in the instrument cluster flashes.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

! CAUTION

When driving downhill, exceeding the set speed limit may occur. When exceeding the limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light  in the instrument cluster flashes.

i Note

By pressing the **MODE** button during the regulation this is cancelled and the GRA is activated.

Front Assistant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor	122
Operation	122
Proximity warning (dangerous proximity)	123
Warning and automatic braking	123
Activating/deactivating	123
Information messages	124

The Front Assistant (from here on only referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes as appropriate.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » Fig. 123 on page 122. ►

! WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The system has physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The increased passenger protection afforded through the system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

! CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor



Fig. 123
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The radar sensor » Fig. 123 (Hereinafter referred to simply as the sensor) may detect objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is soiled by mud, snow and the like.
- The area in front and around the sensor is obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or covered, the corresponding message appears on the display of the instrument cluster » page 124, *Information messages*.

! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the system. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the sensor should not be obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

! CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

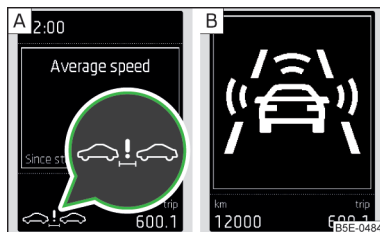


Fig. 124
Instrument cluster display: Note (dangerous distance) / warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The TCS is activated » page 115, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp" curves or with an ESC engagement » [page 115](#).

Proximity warning (dangerous proximity)

 Read and observe  and  on [page 122](#) first.

If a safe distance to the vehicle ahead is not maintained, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol  » [Fig. 124 on page 122](#) - [\[A\]](#).

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

 Read and observe  and  on [page 122](#) first.

Emergency braking at low speed

In a driving speed range of about 5 km/h to about 30 km/h the automatic braking action is not preceded by a warning. With an immediate impact hazard automatic braking is done with the braking force increasing in stages.

With automatic braking the symbol appears  » [Fig. 124 on page 122](#) - [\[B\]](#) in the display.

Advance warning

If the system detects a risk of collision, the symbol  » [Fig. 124 on page 122](#) - [\[C\]](#) appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.

- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle in a driving speed range of about 30 km/h to about 210 km/h.
- There is a risk of a collision with a stationary moving obstacle in a vehicle speed range of approximately 30 km/h to about 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert

If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking

If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Brake assist

If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Note

- If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
- The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

Activating/deactivating

 Read and observe  and  on [page 122](#) first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » .

The activation or deactivation of the system can be done in one of two ways.

- In the menu item **Assist system** the display of the instrument cluster » [page 45](#), **MAXI DOT display**.
- In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The following functions can be activated or deactivated separately in infotainment.

- Distance warning
- Advance warning

Upon deactivation of these functions remains disabled even after switching off and switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assistant should be switched off for safety reasons.

- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Information messages

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

📖 Front Assist: No sensor view.

The sensor is soiled or covered.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the disturbance causing the lack of visibility » Fig. 123 on page 122.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 123. Seek help from a specialist garage.

📖 Front Assist not available.

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 123. Seek help from a specialist garage.

START-STOP

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions for the system	124
Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox	125
Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox	125
System conditioned automatic start-up	126
Manually deactivating/activating	126
Information messages	126

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to just as the system) reduces fuel consumption and polluting emissions and CO₂ emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions for the system

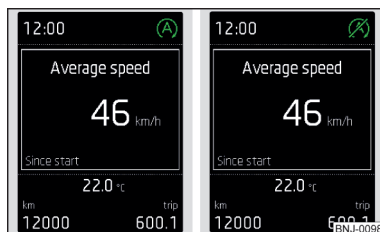


Fig. 125
Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

📖 Read and observe ! on page 124 first.

For the system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to operate, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function cannot be either influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's view.

If, after stopping the vehicle, the check icon (X) » Fig. 125 appears on the display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential, for example, for the following reasons.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.

- The current consumption is too high.
- High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual indoor temperature).

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

 **Read and observe**  on page 124 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shut down

- Stop the vehicle.
- Shift the gear lever to Neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display  » Fig. 125 on page 124.

Automatic engine start

- Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol  goes out.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

 **Read and observe**  on page 124 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shut down

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display  » Fig. 125 on page 124.

Automatic engine start

- Release the brake pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol  goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission

Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position, then the automatic start up of the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D/S** or **N** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km/h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when turning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System conditioned automatic start-up

Read and observe on page 124 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. The possible reasons for this are, for example:

- The vehicle has begun to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating



Fig. 126
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe on page 124 first.

Deactivate/activate

- Press the button » Fig. 126.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

Note

If the system is automatically deactivated when the engine is turned off, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

Read and observe on page 124 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Start the engine manually!

START MANUALLY

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

Error: start-stop system

START STOP ERROR

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	126
Information messages	127

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to only as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe on page 126 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65 - 200 km/h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

 **Read and observe  on page 126 first.**

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster .

 **Fatigue detected. Take a break!**

 **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Save tyre pressure values _____ 127

Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display _____ 128

Save tyre pressure values by pressing a button _____ 128

The tyre pressure monitoring function monitors (hereinafter referred to only as a system) the tyre pressure while driving.

When changing the tyre inflation pressure, the warning light illuminates  in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the indication of change in tyre pressure values » [page 37](#).

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed tyre pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility. The tyre pressure should be checked regularly » [page 162](#).
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture.

Save tyre pressure values

 **Read and observe  on page 127 first.**

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system, if one of the following events is present.

- Change of tyre pressure values.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light  in the instrument cluster.

The storage of the tyre pressure values depends on equipment, either in the infotainment or by pressing a button.

WARNING

Before storing the tyre pressures they must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » [page 162](#). If incorrect pressure values are stored the system may not warn even with a tyre pressure that is too low.

CAUTION

The tyre pressure values should be stored every 10 000 km or once a year to ensure proper system function.

Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display



Fig. 127
Key for storing the pressure values / example of the display: the system indicates a pressure change in the front left tyre

Read and observe  on page 127 first.

- › Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › The Infotainment switches on.
- › Press the button  →  → to activate **vehicle status**.
- › By using the function keys   select the menu item *Tyre Press. Loss Indicator*.
- › Press the button  **SET** » Fig. 127.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light  in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 127.

Save tyre pressure values by pressing a button



Fig. 128
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe  on page 127 first.

- › Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Press the symbol key  » Fig. 128 and keep it depressed.

The warning light  in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light extinguishes informs that the storage of the tyre pressure values has taken place.

- › Press the symbol key  Release the symbol key

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	129
Adjusting the ready position	130
A correctly set ready position	130
Assembling the bar ball - first step	131
Assembling the bar ball - second step	131
Check proper fitting	132
Removing the bar ball - first step	132
Removing the bar ball - second step	133
Accessories	133

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

! WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- Do not use the ball head if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Never release the ball head while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

! CAUTION

- Take care with the tow bar - there is a risk of damaging the paint on the bumper.
- When the ball rod is removed, always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

i Note

- Operation and maintenance of towing device » [page 145](#).
- Tow the vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » [page 179](#).

Description

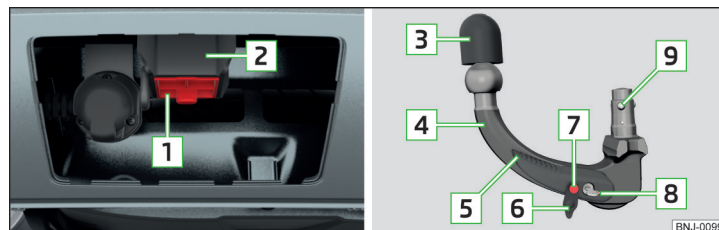


Fig. 129 Carrier for the towing device / tow bar

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Carrier for the towing device and ball rod » Fig. 129

- 1 Cover for the mounting recess
- 2 Mounting recess
- 3 Dust cap
- 4 Ball head
- 5 Operating lever
- 6 Lock cap
- 7 Release pin
- 8 Key
- 9 Locking ball

i Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

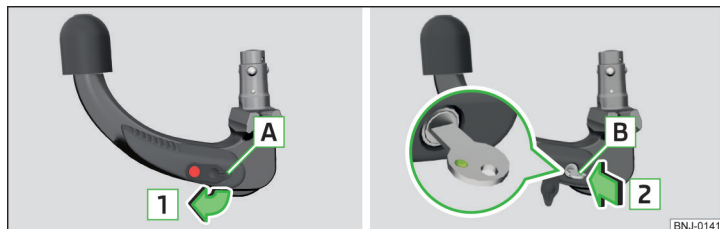


Fig. 130 Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock

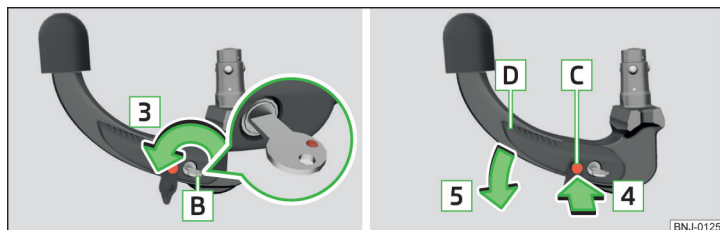


Fig. 131 Lock unlock / press release bolt and lever and push

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

The tow bar must be set prior to installation to the standby position
» page 130, A correctly set ready position.

If this is not in the standby position, then this is set to the standby position as follows.

- Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
- Remove the cover **A** from the lock in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 130.
- Insert the key **B** into the lock in the direction of arrow **2**, so that its green marker points upward.
- Turn the key **B** in the direction of arrow **3** so that the red marking points upwards » Fig. 131.

- Push in the release bolt **C** in the direction of arrow **4** until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever **D** in the direction of arrow **5** until it stops.

The operating lever **D** remains locked in this position.

A correctly set ready position

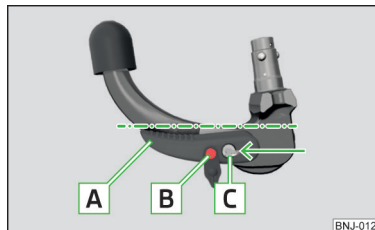


Fig. 132
Ready position

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 132

- ✓ The operating lever **A** is locked in the lower position.
- ✓ The release bolts **B** can be moved.
- ✓ The red mark on the key **C** is pointing upwards.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Assembling the bar ball - first step

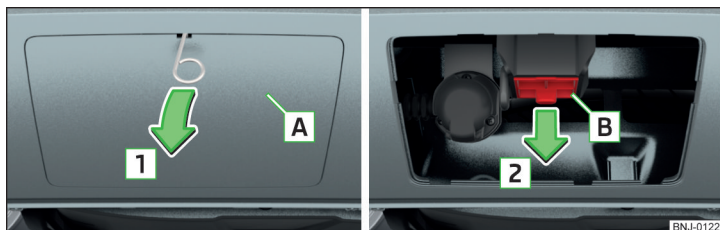


Fig. 133 Remove cap: on the rear bumper / for receiving shaft

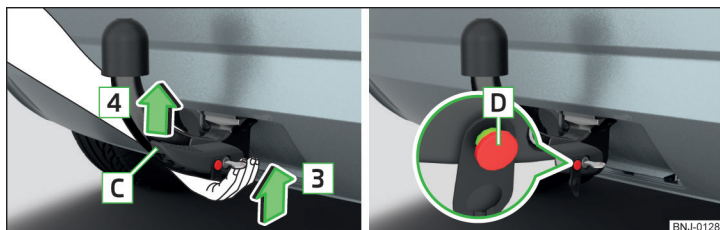


Fig. 134 Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

Preliminary work

Before installing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

- Remove the cover cap **A** » Fig. 133 in the direction of arrow **1** using the on-board tool clamp for pulling off the wheel trims » page 168.
- Remove cover cap **B** in the direction of arrow **2** » **!**.

The tow bar must be set to the standby position » page 130, *A correctly set ready position*. If this is not in the standby position, then it must be set to the standby position » page 130, *Adjusting the ready position*.

Fitting

- Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 134 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction **3** until you hear it click into place » **!**.

The operating lever **C** **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow **4** and the release pin **D** pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » **!**.

If the operating lever **C** does not turn automatically, or if the release pin **D** does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the operating lever **C** downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess **B** - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the operating lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head - there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

! CAUTION

Remove the cover **A** from the rear bumper with care - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper and the cap.

i Note

Store the caps **A** and **B** » Fig. 133 in a suitable place in the luggage compartment after removal.

Assembling the bar ball - second step

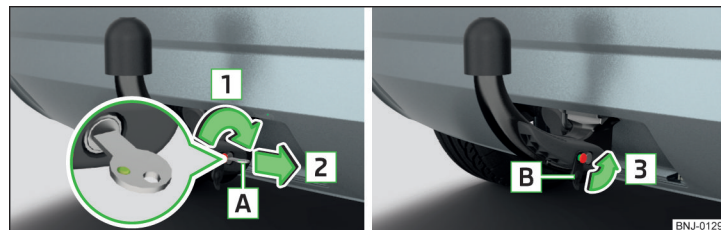


Fig. 135 Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

- To begin with, perform the first step of the ball rod assembly » page 131.

- Turn the key **A** in the direction of arrow **1** so that the green marking points upwards » Fig. 135.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Fit and press in the cap **B** on the hand-wheel lock in the direction of the arrow **3** » **!**.
- Check the ball head for secure mounting » page 132, *Check proper fitting*.

! CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

Check proper fitting

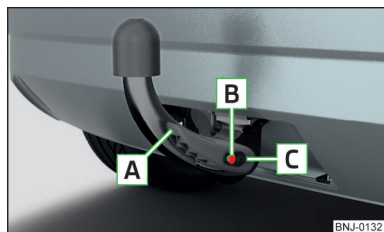


Fig. 136
Correctly secured ball head

! Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

Check that the ball head is fitted properly each time before use.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 136

- ✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
- ✓ Operating lever **A** is located as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin **B** is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap **B** is on the hand-wheel.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head has been properly locked - risk of accident.

Removing the bar ball - first step

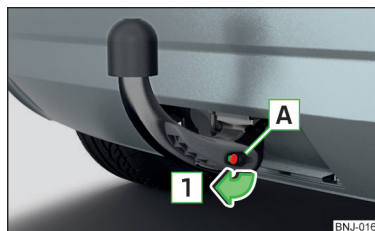


Fig. 137
Remove the cap from the lock

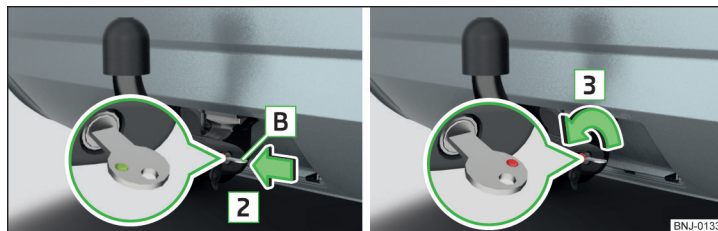


Fig. 138 Insert the key into the lock / unlock the lock

! Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

- Remove the cover **A** from the lock in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 137.
- Insert the key **B** into the lock in the direction of arrow **2**, so that its green marker points upward » Fig. 138.
- Turn the key in the direction of arrow **3** so that the red marking points upwards.

! WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

i Note

We recommend that you put the protective cap on the ball before removing the ball head.

Removing the bar ball - second step

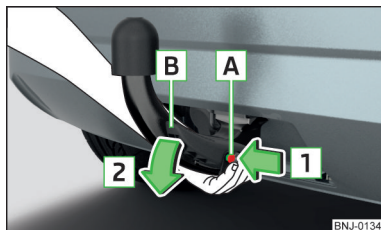


Fig. 139
Release tow bar

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

Removing

- To begin with, perform the first step of the ball end assembly » page 132.
- Grasp the ball head from **underneath** » Fig. 139.
- Push in the release bolt **A** in the direction of arrow **1** until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever **B** in the direction of arrow **2** until it stops.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be built-in » **!**.

Subsequent steps

After removing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

- Insert the cover **B** » Fig. 133 on page 131 in the opposite direction to arrow **2**.
- Fix the cap **A** » Fig. 133 on page 131 aligning it with "check mark" in the lower bumper area.
- Push the cap in first on the left and right and then at the top.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- If the operating lever **B** is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 130, *Adjusting the ready position*.
- Place the tow bar in the standby position, with the key upwards, and store in the box - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

i Note

Clean any dirt from the ball head before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

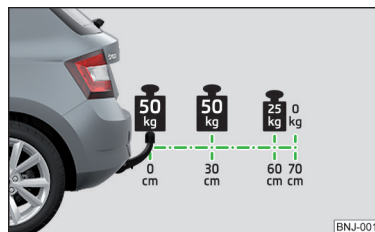


Fig. 140
Depiction of the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and of the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load, depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 129 first.

An accessory can be mounted on the ball head of the towing device (such as a bike carrier).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible protrusion of the towing device ball head and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessory including load is to be observed.

The maximum permissible protrusion for the ball head of the towing device is **70 cm** » Fig. 140.

The total allowable weight of the accessory including load, changes with increasing distance of the center of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the load center of gravity from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	50 kg
30 cm	50 kg
60 cm	25 kg
70 cm	0 kg

! WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing device.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head including towing device - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing device.

i Note

We recommend that you use the accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Trailer, connect and disconnect	134
Loading a trailer	135
Towing a trailer	135
Anti-theft alarm system	136

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with towing equipment or is fitted with towing equipment from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

i Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » [page 183](#).

Trailer, connect and disconnect

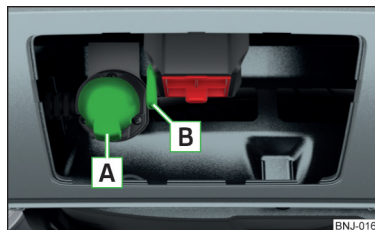


Fig. 141
13-pin socket, and safety eye

Coupling

- Fit the ball rod.
- Lift off protective cap **3** » [Fig. 129 on page 129](#) upwards.
- Place the trailer onto the ball head.
- Insert the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket **A** » [Fig. 141](#).

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can make an electrical connection using a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

- Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security lock slot **B**.

The breakaway cable of the trailer has to **sag** when mounted into the security lock slot for all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like.)

Detaching

- Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the securing eyelet **B** » [Fig. 141](#).
- Pull the trailer cable out of the 13-pin socket.
- Remove the trailer from the ball head.
- Place cap **3** onto the ball head » [Fig. 129 on page 129](#).

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. National legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle can be lifted when a trailer is being towed and the headlights can dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlight setting on the headlight range control » [page 60, Operating the lights](#).

Power to the trailer power grid

For the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the power for the trailer power grid is supplied by the vehicle.

The power supply works with ignition on or off.

! WARNING

- Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installation can cause accidents and serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work correctly.
- The handbrake on the vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

! CAUTION

Incorrect or improperly connected electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » [page 162](#).

Towing capacity and trailer weight

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » [page 194](#), *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1,000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing equipment are merely test data for the towing equipment. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and weight of the trailer - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- An unsecured load can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

If the pointer of the coolant temperature gauge reaches the red scale range, the speed should be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster display. ►

The following information must be observed » [page 40](#),  *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

 WARNING

- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

 CAUTION

If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 54](#).

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing equipment.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

 CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Services, modifications and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions	137
Statutory checks	137
ŠKODA Service Partners	138
ŠKODA Original parts	138
ŠKODA Original accessories	138
Spoiler	139
Component protection	139
Airbags	139
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles	140

The instructions and guidelines issued by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when making any modifications, repairs or technical changes to your vehicle.

Compliance with these guidelines and instructions is in the interest of the roadworthiness and technical condition of your vehicle. The vehicle will comply with road traffic regulations following the modifications, repairs and technical changes.

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » [page 138](#) before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Works on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and parts may suffer increased wear.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the » *Service schedule* warranty.
- The ŠKODA Partner cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner who will also fit the purchased parts correctly.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

 Read and observe  on page 137 first.

If you would like you operate your vehicle in countries other than its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

They will advise you on certain precautions that should be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle as well as to prevent damage.

For example coolant and battery replacement or similar.

Statutory checks

 Read and observe  on page 137 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorised for this purpose. ►

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly, if required by the customer, if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

 **Read and observe**  on page 137 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners are equipped with modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the latest guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

 **Read and observe**  on page 137 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to ŠKODA AUTO a.s. specifications in respect of design, dimensional accuracy and material and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. can guarantee the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but with wear-and-tear parts for at least 15 years after the end of series production and with all other vehicle parts for at least 10 years.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these components for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

 **Read and observe**  on page 137 first.

You should note the following if you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. offers a warranty on the reliability, safety and suitability for your particular vehicle of these accessories. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or offer a warranty on other products even though in some instances such products may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised approval authority.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice and professional fitting if requested by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in ►

any other agreements. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these accessories for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner's website.

Spoiler

 **Read and observe  on page 137 first.**

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, then the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons the vehicle must only ever be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the tailgate.
- A spoiler cannot be fitted alone on the front bumper nor in combination without a spoiler on the tailgate or in combination with an inappropriate spoiler on the tailgate.
- We recommend that you consult a ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs, replacement, fitting or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- Work not properly performed on the spoilers on your vehicle can result in faults - there is a risk of an accident and serious injury.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system - there is a risk of an accident.

Component protection

 **Read and observe  on page 137 first.**

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

- Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
- Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
- The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

 **Read and observe  on page 137 first.**

The system components for the airbag system may be found in the front bumper, doors, front seats, the roof lining or in the bodywork.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Adjustments, repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system - there is the risk of an accident and fatal injury.
- The airbag system must be replaced if an airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to tamper with individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never fit damaged airbag parts to a vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change in the suspension of the vehicle including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations can alter the functioning of the airbag system - there is a risk of accident and fatal injury.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

 **Read and observe  on page 137 first.**

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always ¹⁾be returned free of charge.

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

Detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of end-of-life cars is available from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	141
Automatic car wash systems	141
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	141

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

Washing your vehicle in the winter: water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – there is the risk of an accident.

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

 Read and observe  and  on page 140 first.

Soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as much as you can of this off.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush.
Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - there is a risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

 Read and observe  and  on page 140 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows including the sliding/tilting roof, etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular mounted parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack, two-way radio aerial - it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

The lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers must be cleaned and degreased with cleaning agents especially formulated for the task after an automatic wash with wax.

CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

 Read and observe  and  on page 140 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner - there is a risk of freezing.
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

Note

See also Washing a vehicle with decorative film trim using a high-pressure cleaner » [page 143](#) .

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work	142
Plastic parts	142
Rubber seals	143
Chrome parts	143
Decorative films	143
Windows and external mirrors	143
Headlight glasses	144
Door closing cylinder	144 ►

Cavity protection	144
Jack	144
Wheels	144
Towing device and mounting recess	145
Under-body protection	145
Wiper blades	145

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, kitchen scrubbers or similar cleaning products – there is a risk of damaging the paintwork finish.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the exterior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

 **Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.**

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - there is a risk of scratching the paintwork.
- Do not apply polish to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any polish to body surfaces that come into contact with door seals and window guides.

Plastic parts

 **Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.**

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not clean plastic parts completely, use a specific plastic care product. ▶

! CAUTION

Do not use polish on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer against a freezing to painted body parts and against road noise.

! CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals or window guides with any cleaning agent.
- An additional treatment of the seals can attack their protective coating and road noise may be generated.

Chrome parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

! CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - there is a risk of scratching the finish.

Decorative films

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be observed for the high-pressure washing the vehicle.

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep the jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

! CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- No ice scrapers should be used in the winter months to remove ice and snow from the areas to which films have been applied. Do not remove frozen snow or ice using other objects - there is a risk of damage to the film.

Windows and external mirrors

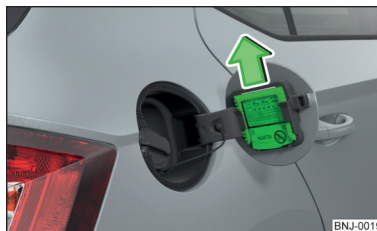


Fig. 142
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 142.

Cleaning windows

Clean the windows regularly with clean water, inside and out.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand, and salt must not be removed from the window glass and mirrors - risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.

- Never remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – there is a risk of cracking in glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

! CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the chamois leather can smear the windows and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Clean the plastic headlight lenses with clean, warm water and soap.

! CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Door closing cylinder

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

! CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

! WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – there is a risk of fire.

Jack

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

 Read and observe  and  on page 142 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake dust otherwise the rim material will be attacked.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims. ►

! CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing device and mounting recess

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Before hitching a trailer check the ball head and apply a suitable grease where necessary.

Fit the protective cap when stowing away the ball head to protect the luggage compartment against dirt.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

Damage to the **protective coating** cannot be excluded when the vehicle is driven.

We recommend that you have the protective coating under the body and on the chassis inspected - preferably before the beginning and at the end of the cold season.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. These substances could ignite when the engine reaches its operating temperature - there is a risk of fire.

Wiper blades

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 142 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » [page 141](#).

Interior care

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	146
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®	146
Seat covers	147
Safety belts	147

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents and air fresheners to the dashboard – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna – there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the headlining with a brush – risk of damage to the lining surface.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

i Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Natural leather

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature brittling of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a cotton or woollen cloth lightly moistened with water and then dry with a clean dry cloth » !.

Clean **more severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point during cleaning and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams. The leather would then become brittle and cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc. may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Damage of this nature cannot later be recognized as a justified complaint.

i Note

During the life of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g. wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Synthetic leather

Clean the synthetic leather with a damp cloth.

If the synthetic leather does not come completely clean with this method, a mild soap solution or specific cleaning agent must be used.

Fabrics

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and special detergent to clean the headlining. ▶

Remove pilling and residues on upholstery with a brush.

Remove stubborn hair with a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

! CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Electrically heated seats

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

» !.

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning agents particularly formulated for them.

Compressed areas created on the fabrics by everyday use can be removed by brushing against the nap with a lightly moistened brush.

Always treat all parts of the upholstery so that no visible boundaries are created. Then leave the seat to dry completely.

! CAUTION

- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly vacuum dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - there is a risk of stretching the upholstery.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Safety belts

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with a mild, soapy solution.

Remove dirt with a soft brush.

! WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	148
Lead-free petrol	149
Diesel fuel	150

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » [Fig. 143 on page 148](#).

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – there is a risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country in which it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the country concerned. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

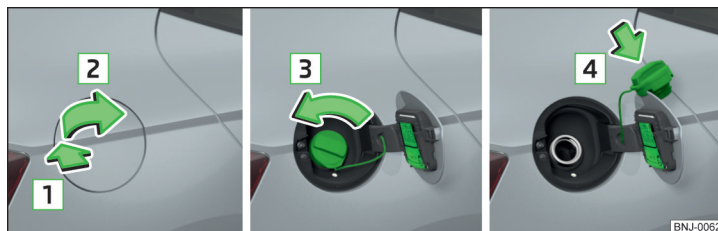


Fig. 143 Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap

Read and observe on page 148 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
 - ✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
 - Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow accordingly » [Fig. 143](#).
 - Open the cover in the direction of the arrow .
 - Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow .
 - Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow .
 - Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » .
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » .
- Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
 - Screw in the tank cap in the opposite direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.
 - Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

! WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

! WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this could be damaged and fuel could escape – there is a risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refueling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

i Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **45 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

📖 **Read and observe** ! on page 148 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228¹⁾** standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol with a **maximum of 10% bioethanol (E10)**.

Specified fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93 RON** can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95 RON** or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95 RON**, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92** and/or **93 RON** can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol complying with EN 228¹⁾ meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

! CAUTION

- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Engine parts could be significantly damaged.

! CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

! CAUTION

Under no circumstances may fuel additives with metal components be used, and especially not those with manganese and iron content. Risk of considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

! CAUTION

Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) may be used. Risk of considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95.

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95 RON** does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93 RON** is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

 **Read and observe**  on page 148 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590¹⁾** standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with a **maximum of 7% bi-diesel (B7)²⁾**.

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Engine parts could be significantly damaged.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents), into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	152
Engine compartment overview	152
Radiator fan	153
Windscreen washer system	153 ►

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

²⁾ In Germany complying with standard DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scalding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the generally applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area.

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the P position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – there is a risk of scalding. Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – there is a risk of burns.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – there is a risk of death. Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

■ Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle against rolling away and support it with suitable axle stands: the car jack is not sufficient for this – there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- If there is anything you are not sure about concerning fluids, please consult a specialist garage.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

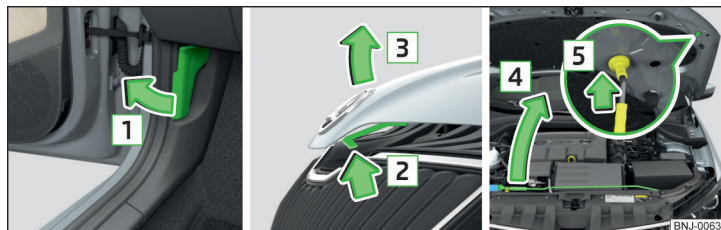


Fig. 144 Opening the bonnet

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

Open flap

- Open the front door.
- Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 144.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

- Push the release lever in the direction of arrow **2**.

The bonnet is then unlocked.

- Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow **4** from the holder.
- Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow **5**.

Close the flap

- Lift the bonnet.
- Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
- Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do not push it in.

! WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – there is the risk of an accident.
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed – there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 144.

Engine compartment overview

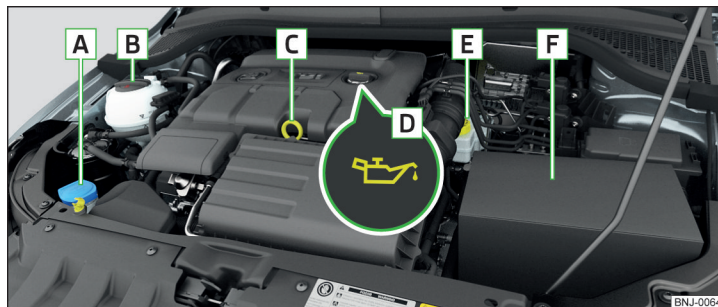


Fig. 145 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 145

A	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	153
B	Coolant expansion tank	156
C	Engine oil dipstick	154
D	Oil filler opening	155
E	Brake fluid reservoir	157
F	Battery (below a cover)	157

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

! WARNING

The fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Windscreen washer system



Fig. 146
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir **A** is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 146.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system ¹⁾.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**in winter additionally with antifreeze**) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

The washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze in winter even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

¹⁾ In some countries, 5.4 ltr. applies for both variants.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification	154
Checking the oil level	154
Replenishing	155

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

Engine oils are the subject of continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that you have the oil changed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 48. ►

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings
» page 150.

! CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – there is a risk of serious engine damage.

i Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- You must wash yourself thoroughly if your skin has come into contact with oil.

Specification

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI	VW 504 00
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	VW 504 00

Diesel engine	Specification
1.4 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI	VW 502 00
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	VW 502 00

! CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
 - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
 - for diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

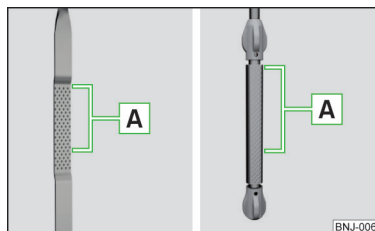


Fig. 147
Principle sketch: Dipstick

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 147

[A] The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status

- Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.
- Pull out the dipstick.
- Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
- Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine burns some oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark  as well as the relevant notification » page 40. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly. ▶

! CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range **A** » Fig. 147 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system!
- If for some reason, it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances,  do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range **A**,  do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

 Read and observe  and  on page 154 first.

- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 145 on page 152.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 154.
- Check the oil level » page 154.
- Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
- Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level	156
Replenishing	156

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive level in the coolant must amount to at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir
» Fig. 148 on page 156.

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings
» page 150.

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Consult a doctor immediately if coolant is swallowed.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

! CAUTION

-  Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- With an empty expansion tank top up coolant. The system could ventilate - there is a risk of engine damage,  not continue! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to fall below 40 %.
- Over 60 % coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 148 on page 156.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking the coolant level

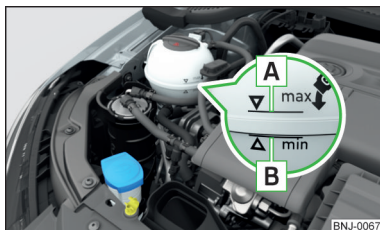


Fig. 148
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 155 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion tank » Fig. 148

A Mark for the **maximum** permissible coolant level

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks **A** and **B**.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The engine is not heated.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status

» Check the level of coolant at the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 148.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The stand can also be above the mark **A** » Fig. 148.

In case of low coolant level, the control symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster **1** as well as the relevant notification » page 40, **1** *Coolant* in the instrument cluster. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 155 first.

The coolant expansion tank should always contain a small amount of coolant » page 155, **II** in section *Introduction*.

- » Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.
- » Replenish the coolant.
- » Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- Only top up with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Level check	157
Specification	157

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 149 on page 157.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 150.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - there is the risk of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 149 on page 157, **1** - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Level check



Fig. 149
Brake fluid reservoir

i Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 156 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status

➤ Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 149.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results in operation due to normal wear and tear and the automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light **(i)** illuminating in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification being displayed

» page 34, **(i)** Brake system.

Specification

i Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 156 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114;
- FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

i Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open cover	158
Checking the battery electrolyte level	159
Charging	159
Replacing	160
Disconnecting or reconnecting	160
Automatic load deactivation	160

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

! WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the generally applicable rules of safety as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety glasses or a face shield – there is a risk of being blinded.
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds on contact with the skin which take a long time to heal.
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the eyes immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately.
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- Seek immediate medical assistance if you swallow battery acid.

! WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – there is a risk of explosion.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – there is a risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – there is a risk of damage to the paintwork.

- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal $\ominus$ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

i Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Open cover

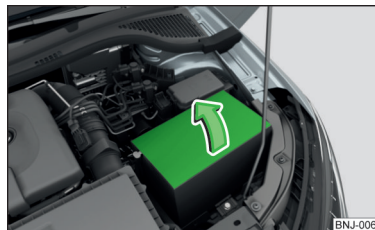


Fig. 150
Polyester cover of vehicle battery

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 150.

➤ Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

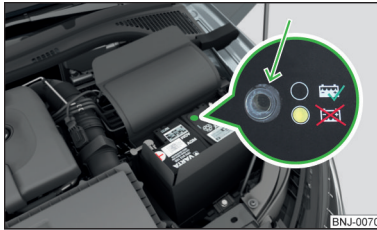


Fig. 151
Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe **1** and **2** on page 158 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, » Fig. 151 the colouring of the display can indicate the acidic level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend you have the electrolyte level checked by a specialist garage from time to time, especially in the following cases.

- High external temperatures.
- Longer day trips.
- After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has some of its starting power at low temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note

- The battery electrolyte level is also periodically checked by a specialist garage as part of the Inspection Service.
- For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe **1** and **2** on page 158 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ All consumers are turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents

- Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
- Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the charger manufacturer's instructions.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging. ►

! WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth
» page 176.

Replacing

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend that the battery is replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting or reconnecting

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

Disconnecting

➤ Switch off the ignition.

➤ First, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first, then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

Connecting

➤ First, connect the positive ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖ battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electric window levers	» page 58
Radio	Enter code » <i>operating instructions for the Infotainment display radio</i>
Time settings	» page 33

! CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly - risk of a cable fire.

i Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 158 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This may be noticed from the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or shut off completely if necessary. ▶

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Notes on using wheels	161
Tyre pressure	162
Tyre wear	162
Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange	163
Tyre damage	163
Unidirectional tyres	164

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

National legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not replace tyres individually.

For the sake of the environment

Old and unserviceable tyres are a polluting hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

 Read and observe  on page 161 first.

During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels. ►

Tyre storage

Mark the tyres as you remove them so that you are able to refit them to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age

Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts

Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. Therefore we recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! WARNING

Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

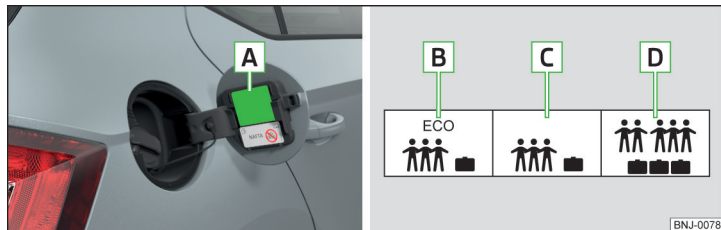


Fig. 152 Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures / inflate tyres

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

The specified tyre pressures are on a label **A** » Fig. 152.

For some countries, the sticker is produced without pictograms, but only with listed tyre inflation values.

Label with prescribed tyre inflation pressure values » Fig. 152

- A** Position of the label
- B** Inflation pressure for half load
- C** Inflation pressure for increased driving comfort at half load
- D** Inflation pressure for full load

As a result of adjusting pressure to the value **C** for increased driving comfort, fuel consumption can rise slightly.

Check tyre pressures

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » page 127.

! WARNING

- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the pressure is too low, the tyre must overcome a greater rolling resistance. This will heat the tyre up, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- For very fast tyre pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure try to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following notes may affect tyre wear.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the tyre wear. ►

Wheel balance

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when the car is being driven which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, the wheels have to be balanced at specialist garage.

Also have the wheels rebalanced after replacing or repairing the tyres.

Adjustment of the vehicle geometry

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres and negatively affects the driving safety. With a distinctive tyre wear, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

! WARNING

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange

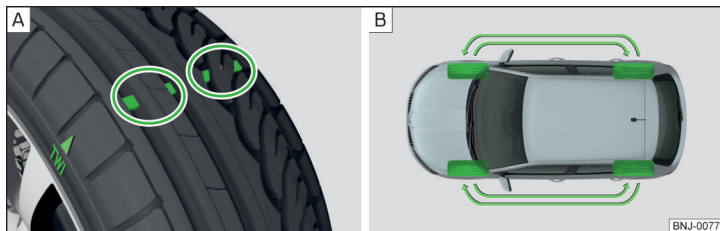


Fig. 153 Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels

📖 Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed » Fig. 153 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Exchanging the wheels

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 153 - B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After swapping the wheels, the tyre pressure should be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 127.

! WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary grip particularly at high speeds on wet roads. "Aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle - "swimming" on a wet road surface) could be the result.

Tyre damage

📖 Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

! WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres - there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres with these substances come into contact, then we recommend that you check this in a specialist workshop.

Unidirectional tyres

 **Read and observe**  on page 161 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The direction of rotation indicated must be complied with to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are principally the following.

- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Explanation of the tire labelling _____ 164

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants _____ 165

Authorised tyre variants are to be selected according to the engine size of your vehicle » [page 165](#), *Manufacturer-approved tyre variants*.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

The information listed in the table corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

The approved tyre / rim combinations for your car are given on the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Explanation of the tire labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

For example, **185/65 R 14 86 T** means:

185	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial

14	Diameter of wheel in inches
86	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example **DOT ... 11 14...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

The marking **M+S** means that the associated tire is suitable for winter use.

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load bearing capacity for each individual tyre.

Load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (in kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol

The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Topspeed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

CAUTION

The information about load index and speed symbol can be found in the vehicle sales and technical documentation.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal speed symbol
1.0 l/44 kW MPI	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15		
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15		
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	
1.2 l/66 kW TSI	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15		
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	185/60 R15	84	H
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	
1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15		
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	
1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H
	215/45 R16	86	
	215/40 R17	87	

Winter use

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres	165
Snow chains	165

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres.

To get best possible handling, winter tyres must be used on all four wheels. The minimum tread depth should be 4 mm.

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with the infotainment system with key **CAR** the speed limit can be set for winter tyres » *User manual Infotainment*, chapter *Adjust vehicle systems (key CAR)*.

For other vehicles, there is the possibility to have the speed limit set for winter tyres in a specialist workshop.

Only use those winter tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Re-fit the summer tyres at an appropriate time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations. ►

Wheel size	Depth D	Tyre size
5Jx14	35 mm	175/70 R14
6Jx15	38 mm	185/60 R15

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » [page 170](#).

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains are to be removed when driving where there is no snow. Otherwise they cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle	167
Placement of the reflective vest	167
Fire extinguisher	168
Vehicle tool kit	168

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

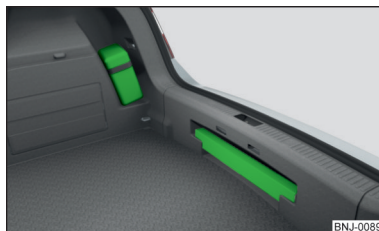


Fig. 154
First aid kit and warning triangle
- Version 1

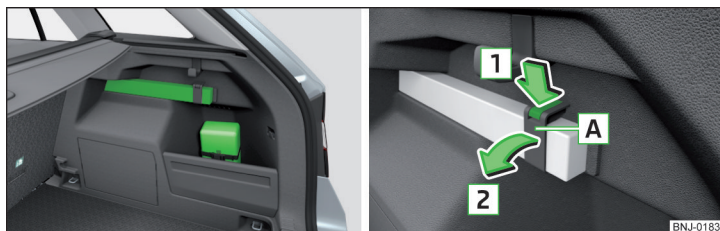


Fig. 155 First-aid kit and warning triangle - loosen version 2 / attachment strap

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

For another first aid kit and warning triangle the storage compartments may possibly be too small.

First-aid box

The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 154 or » Fig. 155.

Warning triangle - version 1

The warning triangle can be stored in the rear wall trim panel » Fig. 154.

Warning triangle - version 2

The warning triangle can be placed in the panel at the right hand side of the luggage compartment and secured to the fastening strap » Fig. 155.

Undo / secure fastening strap

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 155.
- Release strap **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Pull strap **A** against arrow direction **2** until it locks into place.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Placement of the reflective vest

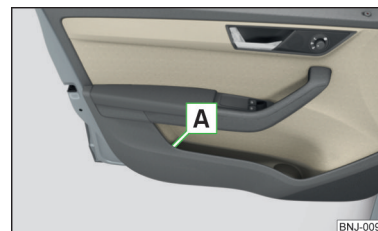


Fig. 156
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment inside the storage compartment of the door **A**» Fig. 156.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 157
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

Removing/attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 157.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.
- For mounting re-sit the fire extinguisher back into the holder and secure it with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. National legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

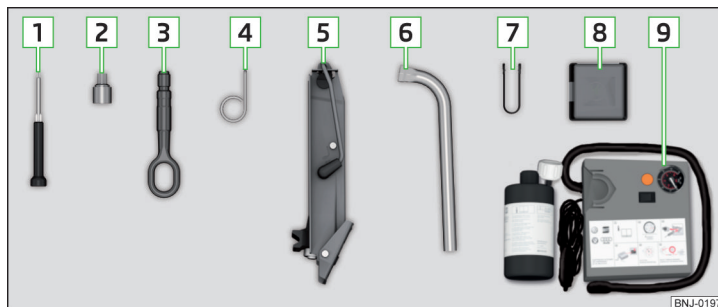


Fig. 158 Vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 3 Towing eye
- 4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 5 Jack with sign
- 6 Wheel brace
- 7 Tool for removing wheel bolt caps
- 8 Replacement bulb set
- 9 Breakdown kit

! WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

! CAUTION

- Screw the jack back to the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit screws.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

i Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Reserve and temporary spare wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Remove / store wheel _____ 169
Spare wheel _____ 169

When using an emergency or spare wheel make sure to mount a wheel with the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored » [page 127](#).

! WARNING

- If, you get a puncture a spare tyre has to be mounted with a non-bound direction or opposite direction of rotation when, then drive carefully. In this situation the best properties of the tyre are no longer present.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Remove / store wheel



Fig. 159
Taking the wheel out

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » [Fig. 159](#).

Taking the wheel out

- Open the tailgate.
- Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
- Loosen the belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- Unscrew the nut in direction of arrow » [Fig. 159](#).
- Take out the wheel.

Stowing the wheel

- Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
- Screw on the nut in the opposite direction to the arrow » [Fig. 159](#) until the wheel is safely secured.
- Replace the box with the tool kit into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- Close the tailgate.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. ▶

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » [page 162](#).
- Only use the temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation	170
Full wheel trim	170
Wheel bolts	171
Changing a wheel	171
Subsequent steps	171
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	172
Raising the vehicle	172
Anti-theft wheel bolts	173

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- ✓ Switch on the hazard lights.
- ✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- ✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Find a location with a flat, solid surface.
- ✓ Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

If the vehicle has been retrofitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » [page 164](#), *Explanation of the tire labelling*.

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

- Switch off the engine.
- Engage the **first gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission in the **P-position**.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Uncouple any trailer.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » [page 168](#) and the **spare wheel** » [page 169](#) from the boot.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts the wheel trim should be removed.

Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » [page 168](#) into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » .
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference latches correctly into position.

CAUTION

Notes from the factory or from the ŠKODA Original accessory delivered trim..

- When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
- On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

! CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the trim. The cover could be damaged.
- If wheel trims are fitted, it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

i Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 160
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts the caps are to be removed.

Pulling off

- Push the extraction pliers » [page 168](#) sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 160](#).

Fitting

- Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Changing a wheel

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

- Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.

- Lower the vehicle.

- Tighten the opposite wheel bolts alternately (cross-wise) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » [page 164](#).

! WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) until the vehicle has been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » [page 169](#), *Reserve and temporary spare wheel*.
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored » [page 127](#).

Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

! WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.

! WARNING (Continued)

- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 161
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts the caps from the wheel bolts must be removed.

Undoing

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 161.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 161 until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts the caps must be re-fit.

! WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle



Fig. 162
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

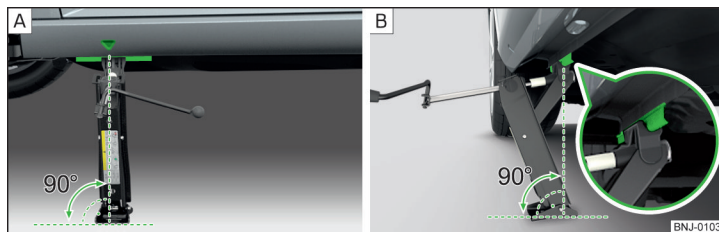


Fig. 163 **Attach lifting jack**

To lift the vehicle, use the jack from the tool kit.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The jacking points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam.

The positions of these are embossed by means of markings on the side surface of the lower sill » Fig. 162.

- Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 163 - **A**.
- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 163 - **B**.
- Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 173.

! WARNING

- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

! CAUTION

Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the web on the lower sil, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

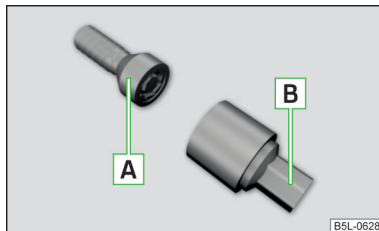


Fig. 164
Principle sketch: Anti-theft
wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect wheels from being stolen. These can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter **B** » Fig. 164.

- Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
- The adapter **B** » Fig. 164 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts **A** stuck.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter **B** up to the stop.

- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 172.
- Remove the adapter.
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

For a possible wheel change the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts should always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is kept in the vehicle tool kit.

i Note

- Note the embarked code number on both the adapter and at the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a ŠKODA Original Parts replacement adapter, if necessary.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Components of the puncture repair kit	174
General information	174
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	175
Sealing and inflating the tyre	175
Notes for driving with tyre repaired	175

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel need not be removed during the repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre. ►

! WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

i Note

- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the wheel that was repaired using the breakdown kit or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

Components of the puncture repair kit

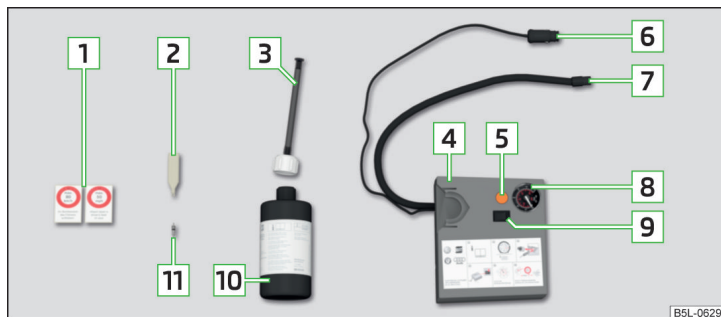


Fig. 165 Principle sketch: Repair kit components

Read and observe ! on page 174 first.

Components of the set » Fig. 165

- 1 Sticker with "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph" speed designation
- 2 Valve remover
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
- 6 12 volt cable connector

- 7 Tyre inflation hose
- 8 Tyre pressure indicator
- 9 ON and OFF switch
- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealant
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover [2] has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It contains a sealant and an air compressor.

i Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 174 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
- ✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- ✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
- ✓ Have **all the passengers get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- The rim is damaged.
- The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
- The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre wall is damaged.
- The result will be to drive with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyres.
- After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

 **Read and observe**  on page 174 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Switch off the engine.
- Engage the **first gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission in the **P-position**.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » [page 174, General information](#).
- Uncouple trailer, if attached.
- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
- Stick the corresponding sticker  » [Fig. 165 on page 174](#) on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover  to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

 **Read and observe**  on page 174 first.

Sealing

- Shake the tyre inflator bottle  » [Fig. 165 on page 174](#) vigorously several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose  onto the tyre inflator bottle  in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose  and push the open end fully on to the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle  with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover .

Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose  » [Fig. 165 on page 174](#) firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector  into 12 Volt socket » [page 79](#).
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch .

- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose  from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose  back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you still cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose  from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is reached, the journey may be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre.  Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot while the tyre is being inflated - there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the most - risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with tyre repaired

 **Read and observe**  on page 174 first.

The filling pressure of the repaired tyre is a 10-minute test drive.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

-  **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Correct the tyre pressure back to the correct value.

➤ Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle _____ 176

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

! WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » [page 150](#).
- A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

i Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

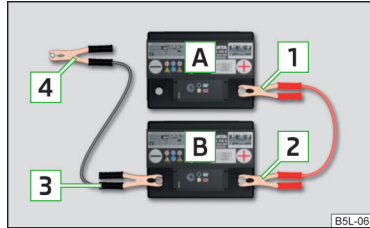


Fig. 166
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

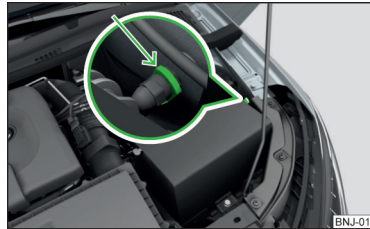


Fig. 167
Engine earth: START-STOP system

 **Read and observe ! on page 176 first.**

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A**.
» [Fig. 166](#).
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

The jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point on vehicles with the START-STOP system » [Fig. 167](#).

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Detach the jumper cables in the exact **reverse** order that they were attached.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Obey the instructions of the jump start cable manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

! WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other - risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle - risk of short circuit.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

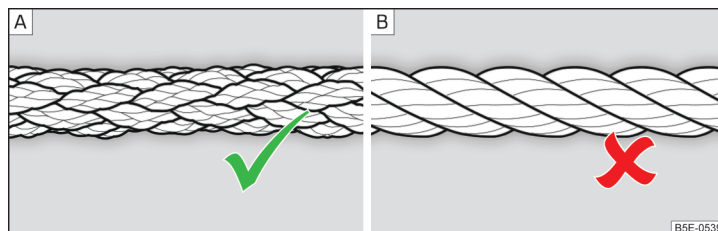


Fig. 168 Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	178
Rear towing eye	179
Vehicles with a tow hitch	179

A braided tow rope must be used for towing » Fig. 168 - A.

The following guidelines must be observed when towing.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle

- Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used. ▶

- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the potential issues of towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle or to be towed.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

! WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- Exercise increased caution when towing.
- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 168 - [B], the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 176, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the drive wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 178 or » page 179 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 129.

i Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye



Fig. 169 Removing the cap / installing the towing eye

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 169.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow [2].
- After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow [1] and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow [3] » Fig. 169 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow [3].

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye



Fig. 170
Rear towing eye

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 178 first.

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right » Fig. 170.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 178 first.

The removable towing ball may be fitted and used for towing on vehicles with a factory fitted tow hitch » page 129, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key	179
Synchronising the remote control	180

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key



Fig. 171 Remove cover/take out battery

Read and observe **!** on page 179 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover **A** » Fig. 171 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region **B**.
- Open the battery in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Insert the battery cover **A** and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 180.

i Note

Replacing the battery in the key a glued decorative cover requires the cover to be destroyed. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

📖 Read and observe 📖 on page 179 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when the remote control is pressed, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Emergency unlocking/locking

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	180
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	180
Unlocking the tailgate	181
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	181

Unlocking/locking the driver's door



Fig. 172 Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder / locking cylinder with key

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

- Pull on the door handle and hold it pulled.

- Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover » Fig. 172.
- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.
- For vehicles with **LHD** insert the remote control key **with the buttons facing up** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
- For vehicles with **RHD** insert the remote control key **directed with buttons down** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
- Pull on the door handle and hold it pulled.
- Replace the cap in its original position.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder



Fig. 173 Emergency locking: Left/right rear door

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder. It is only visible after opening the door.

- Remove the cover **A** » Fig. 173.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
- Replace the cover **A**.

Unlocking the tailgate

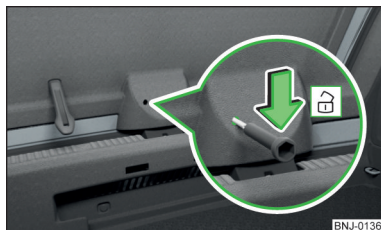


Fig. 174
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

The boot lid can be unlocked manually in an emergency.

- › Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 174 as far as the stop.
- › Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- › Open the tailgate.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

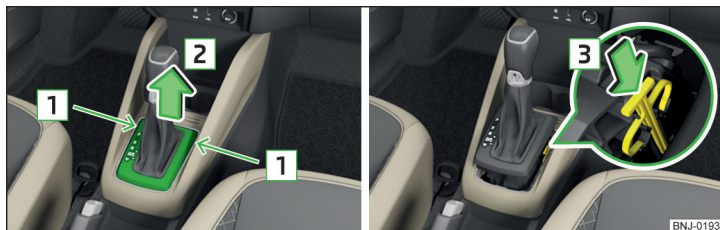


Fig. 175 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

- › Firmly apply the handbrake.
- › Insert a flathead screwdriver into the gap in the arrow range [1] » Fig. 175 and carefully lift the cover in arrow direction [2].
- › Likewise lift the cover with your hand as well.
- › With one finger, push the yellow plastic element in the direction of arrow [3].
- › At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to **N**.

The selector lever will be locked once more if it is moved again to **P**.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	181
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	182

! WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

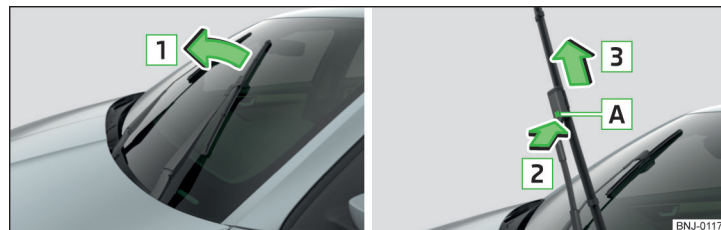


Fig. 176 Windscreen wiper blade

Read and observe ! on page 181 first.

Adjust the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before replacing the windscreen wiper blades.

Adjusting service position for changing wiper blades

- › Close the bonnet.
- › Switch the ignition off and on again.
- › Push the windscreen wiper lever to position [4] within 10 seconds » page 68, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- › Hold the lever in this position for about 2 seconds.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

- › Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of arrow [1] » Fig. 176. ▶

- Fold the wiper blade out to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow **3** as far as the stop.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position **4** » page 68, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 177 Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe **!** on page 181 first.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 177.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Push the wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow **3** until it locks into place.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel	183
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel	183
Fuses in the engine compartment	185
Fuse cover / fuse assignment in the engine compartment	185

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 183, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 185, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
green	40
red	50

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 150.

! CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses or replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – risk of fire. This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a new fuse burns through again, consult a specialist immediately.

i Note

- We recommend that you always carry replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- One fuse may cover several consumers.
- A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dash panel

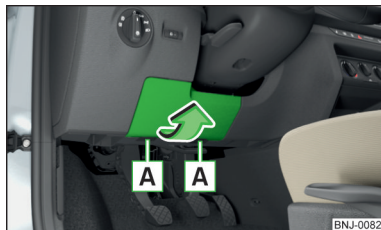


Fig. 178
Remove the cover

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

- Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 178 in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
- Place the clamp on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the clamp in the original place.
- Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.
- Push the lower edge of the cover in the region **A**.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

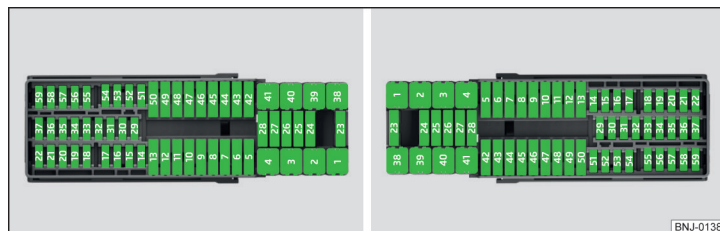


Fig. 179 Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Left parking light, parking light, high-mounted brake light
2	Central locking system
3	Relay for ignition
4	Right-hand light, rear fog light, license plate light
5	Power windows - driver
6	Central control unit, interior lighting
7	Horn
8	Towing hitch - left light
9	Operating lever beneath the steering wheel, engine control unit (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), selector lever of the automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), ESC (only without KESSY), control unit for trailer detection (only without KESSY), power steering (only without KESSY), airbag (only without KESSY)
10	Power windows - rear left
11	Headlight cleaning system
12	Radio display
13	12-volt socket in luggage compartment
14	Operating lever under the steering wheel, light switch, ignition key removal lock (automatic gearbox), diagnostic connector, headlight flasher, SmartGate controller, rain sensor, light sensor

No.	Power consumer
15	Control unit for air conditioning system, selector lever of the automatic gearbox
16	Instrument cluster
17	Alarm system, horn
18	Not assigned
19	Not assigned
20	Not assigned
21	Not assigned
22	Front- and rear windscreen wiper system
23	Not assigned
24	Blower fan for air conditioning system, heating, control unit for air conditioning, heating
25	Not assigned
26	Heated front seats
27	Rear window wiper
28	Not assigned
29	Airbag (only with KESSY)
30	Power windows, light switches, reverse light switches, control unit for air conditioning system, control unit for park assist, exterior mirror, power feed for center button strip, power feed for side button strip, interior mirror
31	Fuel pump, control unit for radiator fan, cruise control, coil of the relay for the front and rear windscreen wipers
32	Diagnostic connector, headlight range adjustment
33	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
34	Heated windscreen washer jets
35	Not assigned
36	Heated front seats
37	Radar
38	Not assigned
39	Electrical auxiliary heating system
40	Not assigned
41	Rear window heater

No.	Power consumer
42	Power windows - front passenger
43	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
44	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt power socket
45	Power windows - rear right
46	Front and rear window washer, operating lever under the steering wheel
47	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
48	Towing hitch - right light
49	Control unit for fuel pump
50	Radio
51	Heating of the external mirror
52	KESSY control unit
53	KESSY steering lock
54	Not assigned
55	Heated front seats
56	Not assigned
57	Not assigned
58	Not assigned
59	Not assigned

Fuses in the engine compartment

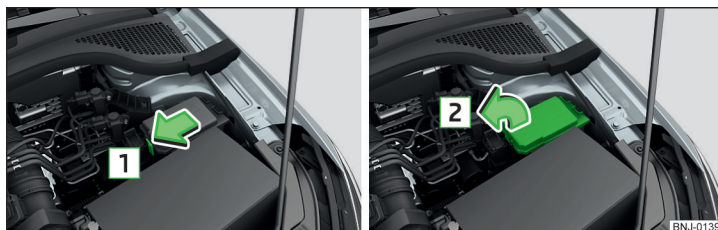


Fig. 180 Remove the cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Replacing fuses

- Press the lock button on the cover in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 180.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
- Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Replace the clamp in the original position.
- Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
- Push in the locking button on the cover and lock.

The cover must engage securely.

Fuse cover / fuse assignment in the engine compartment

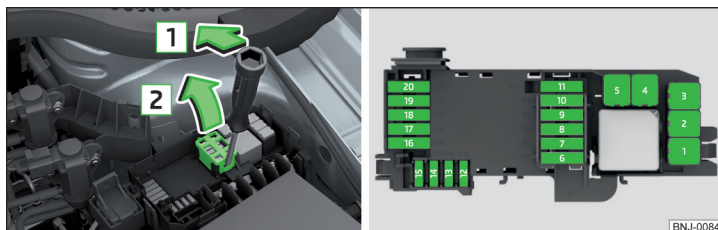


Fig. 181 Fitting and removing fuses / fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Fitting and removing fuse cover

- Release the cover of the fuses in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 181 with the screwdriver in the tool kit » page 168.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
- After the fuse has been replaced, replace the cap in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.

The cap must engage firmly.

No.	Power consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Control unit for glow plug system
3	Control unit for ABS/ESC
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system
5	Electrical auxiliary heating system
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control unit
8	Windscreen wipers
9	Central control unit
10	Control unit for ABS/ESC
11	Not assigned
12	Engine components
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Engine components, coil of the fuel pump relay
15	Engine control unit
16	Starter
17	Engine control unit
18	Engine components, coils of the relay for auxiliary electric heater, radiator fan
19	Lambda probe
20	Engine components, control unit for glow plug system, heating the crankcase ventilation

Replacing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights	186
Removing and installing the cover in the front wheel arch	187
Fitting and removing the wash water container nozzle	187
Replacing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)	188
Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)	188
Replacing the parking light bulb (halogen headlights)	188
Changing bulb for daytime running lights switch (halogen headlight)	189
Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)	189
Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)	190
Replacing the turn signal switch bulb (halogen projector headlights)	190
Replacing the bulb for the fog light	191
Changing the licence plate light bulb	191
Rear Light	192
Replacing bulbs in rear light	192

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, if uncertain, we recommend that bulbs are replaced by a specialist garage or other expert help is sought.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 150](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H8, H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other light bulbs should be changed by your specialist garage.
- We recommend that you always carry a box of replacement bulbs in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- Visit a specialist garage if an LED is faulty.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

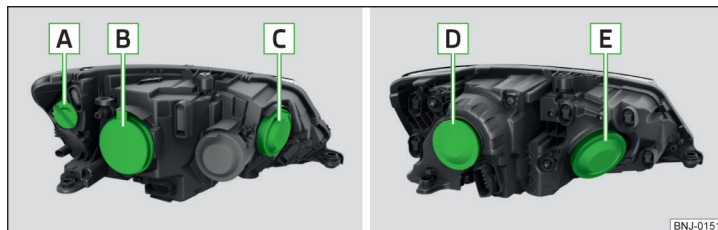


Fig. 182 Principle sketch: Halogen headlights/halogen projector headlights

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen bulbs.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 182

- A** Dayl. dri. light
- B** Low beam, high beam and parking light
- C** Flashing
- D** Low beam
- E** High beam and turning signal switch

Removing and installing the cover in the front wheel arch



Fig. 183
Remove the plastic cover

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 186 first.

The cover in the front wheel must be removed in order to change certain light bulbs.

Details about removing the cover - if needed - are given in the description of each lamp change.

Removing

- Adjust front wheels in the direction of center of the vehicle.
- Insert the clamp for removing the full wheel covers » [page 168](#), *Vehicle tool kit* into the recess in the cover.
- Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow » [Fig. 183](#).

Fitting

- Insert and push the cover into the corresponding opening.
- The cover must engage securely.

Fitting and removing the wash water container nozzle

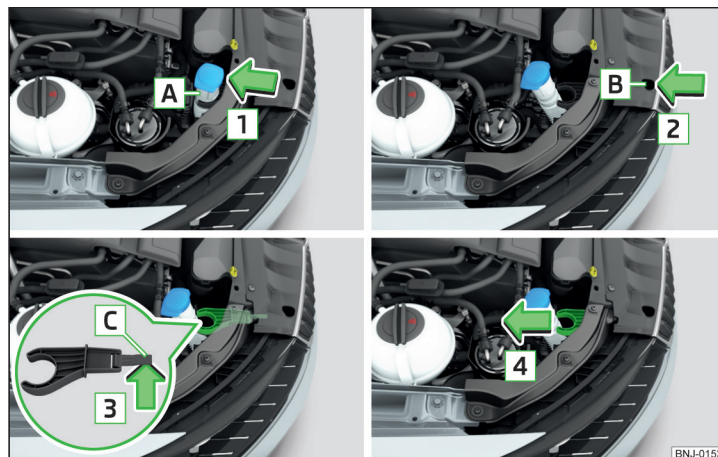


Fig. 184 Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 186 first.

The holder of the wash water container nozzle must be removed in order to replace some light bulbs. The holder is located in the engine compartment, front right.

Details about removing the holder - if needed - are given in each lamp replacement description .

Removing

- Unclip the container nozzle **A** from the holder in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 184](#).
- Insert a finger into the recess **B** in the direction of arrow **2** and lift the catch **C** in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the holder of the container nozzle in the direction of arrow **4**.

Fitting

- Slide the holder of the container nozzle in the opposite direction to the arrow **4** » [Fig. 184](#).

The holder must engage firmly.

- Push the container nozzle into the holder in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.

Replacing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)

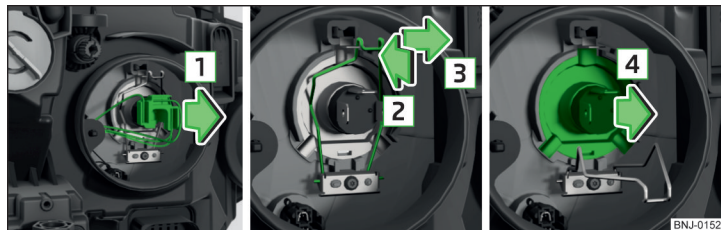


Fig. 185 Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

- Remove the respective cover in the front wheel arch » page 187.

To replace lamp, first remove the bracket of the wash water container nozzle in the right headlight » page 187.

- Remove the protective cap **B** » Fig. 182 on page 186.
- Press the connector latch and remove the plug connector by jiggling in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 185.
- Push in the spring in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Release the spring in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- Remove the defective bulb in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Fit a new bulb into the headlamp and secure the spring in the opposite direction to the arrow **3**.
- Insert the plug in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Fit protective cap **B** » Fig. 182 on page 186.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » page 187.

- Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » page 187.

Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)



Fig. 186 Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

Remove the bracket of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 187.

- Remove the protective cap **B** » Fig. 182 on page 186.
- Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 186.
- Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Insert the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **2**.
- Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** until it stops.
- Fit protective cap **C** » Fig. 182 on page 186.

Replacing the parking light bulb (halogen headlights)



Fig. 187 Change the light bulb for the parking light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

- Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » page 187.

Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » [page 187](#).

- Remove the protective cap **B** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).
- Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow **1** » [Fig. 187](#).
- Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
- Replace the bulb holder with the bulb in the headlamp.
- Fit protective cap **B** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » [page 187](#).

- Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » [page 187](#).

Changing bulb for daytime running lights switch (halogen headlight)

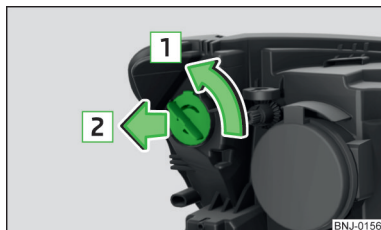


Fig. 188
Changing the bulb for the day-
time running light

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

- Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » [page 187](#).
- Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 188](#).
- Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Change the bulb in the socket.
- Insert the socket with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow **2**.
- Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** until it stops.
- Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » [page 187](#).

Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)



Fig. 189 Changing the bulb for the low beam

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

- Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » [page 187](#).
- Remove the protective cap **D** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).
- Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 189](#).
- Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug **A** on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
- Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow **2**.
- Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** until it stops.
- Fit protective cap **D** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).
- Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » [page 187](#).

Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)



Fig. 190 Changing the bulb for the main beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » [page 187](#).

- Remove the protective cap **B** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).
- Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 190](#).
- Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug **A** on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
- Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow **2**.
- Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** until it stops.
- Fit protective cap **E** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » [page 187](#).

Replacing the turn signal switch bulb (halogen projector headlights)

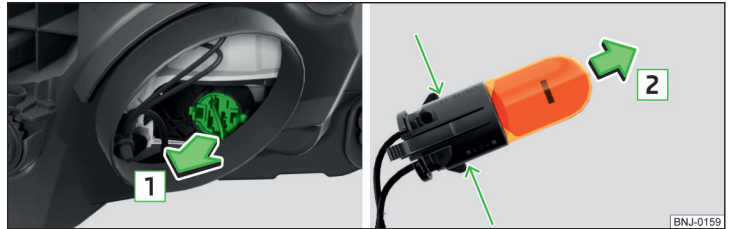


Fig. 191 Changing the bulb for the turn signal light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

To replace lamp, first remove the bracket of the wash water container nozzle in the right headlight » [page 187](#).

- Remove the protective cap **B** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).
- Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow **1** » [Fig. 191](#).
- Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
- Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
- Fit protective cap **E** » [Fig. 182 on page 186](#).

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » [page 187](#).

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

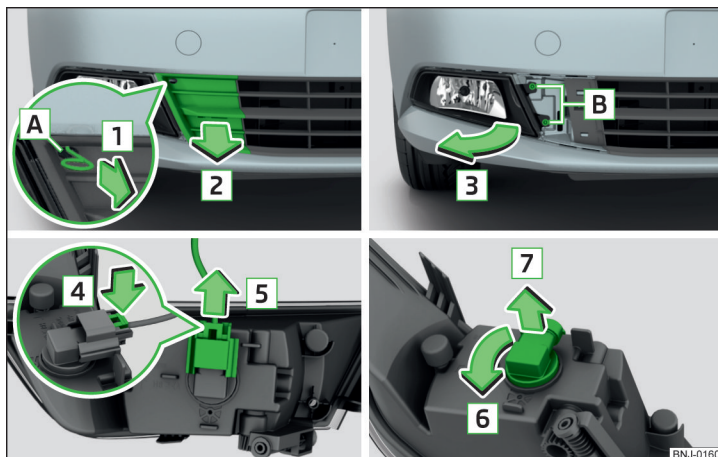


Fig. 192 Removing the fog lamp / changing bulb for fog light switch

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

- Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel covers into opening **A**
 - » page 168, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow **1**
 - » Fig. 192.
- Grasp the guard with the hand and remove by pulling in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 168.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **3**.

Replacing the light bulb

- Push in the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **4** » Fig. 192.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow **6**.
- Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow **7**.
- Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow **6** as far as the stop.

- Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

- Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **3**
 - » Fig. 192 and tightening.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Changing the licence plate light bulb

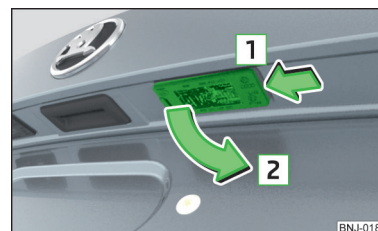


Fig. 193
Remove the licence plate light

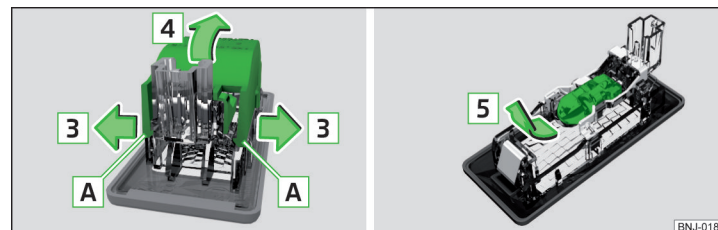


Fig. 194 Remove the cover / replace the bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

- Open the tailgate.
- Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 193.

The lamp comes loose.

- Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow **2** and remove it.
- Remove the cap of the lamp in range **A** and in the direction of arrow **3**
 - » Fig. 194.

- Remove the cap of the light in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder.
- Clip in the cap of the lamp counter to the direction of arrow **4**.
- Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

- Shut the boot lid.

Rear Light

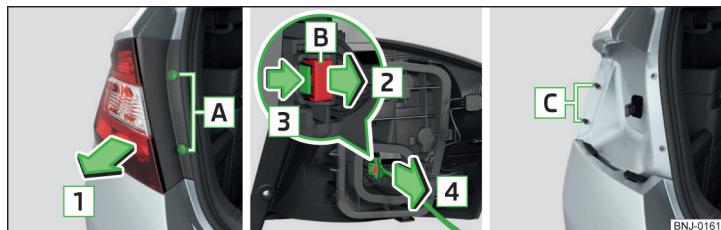


Fig. 195 Remove light / pull out connector

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

Removing

- Open the tailgate.
- Unscrew the screws **A** with the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 168.
- Grasp the light and remove carefully in direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 195 from the pin **C**.
- Press the latch **B** on the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Press the latch in the direction of arrow **3** and pull out the holder in the direction of arrow **4**.

Fitting

- Insert the bulb holder into the lamp.
- Tighten the lock in the opposite direction to the arrow **2** » Fig. 195.
- Insert the lamp with the holes **B** » Fig. 196 on page 192 onto the pins **C** » Fig. 195 in the body.
- Carefully press the light into the pins on the bodywork » **!**.

Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

- Screw the light into place

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the wiring harness has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

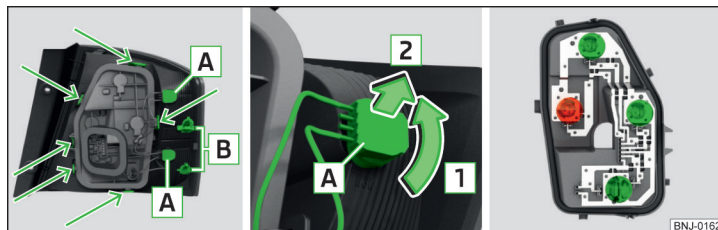


Fig. 196 Outer part of the lamp / removing the bulb / lamp holder

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 186 first.

Changing the bulb in the outer part of the lamp

- Turn the holder with the bulb **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 196.
- Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Jiggle the bulb to remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** to the stop.

Changing the bulb in the inner part of the lamp

- Turn the holders with the bulbs **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 196.
- Remove the holders with the bulbs from the lamp housing in the direction of the arrow **2**.

- Release the bulb holder in the areas identified by arrows » Fig. 196.
- Remove the holder from the lamp.
- Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
- Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage firmly.

- Reinsert the holders with the bulbs into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow **1**.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics	194
Operating weight and payload	195
measurement of fuel consumption and CO ₂ emissions according to ECE	
Regulations and EU Directives	195
Dimensions	196
Departure angle	197
Vehicle-specific details per engine type	198

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

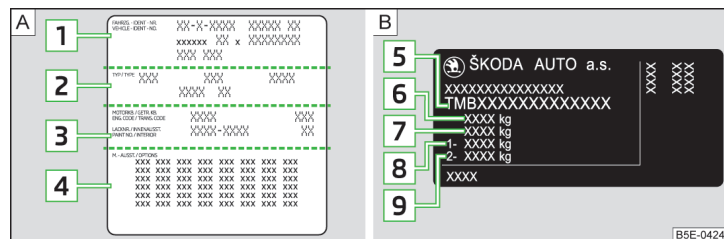


Fig. 197 Vehicle data sticker/type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 197 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck inside the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code / paint number / interior equipment / engine output / engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 197 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

- 5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 6 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 8 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), together with a nameplate.

The VIN can also be displayed in the Infotainment system » *Operating Instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)

The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of an accident and damage.

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » [page 198](#), *Vehicle-specific details per engine type*.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

i Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a specialist garage.

measurement of fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Urban driving is then simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the Škoda websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

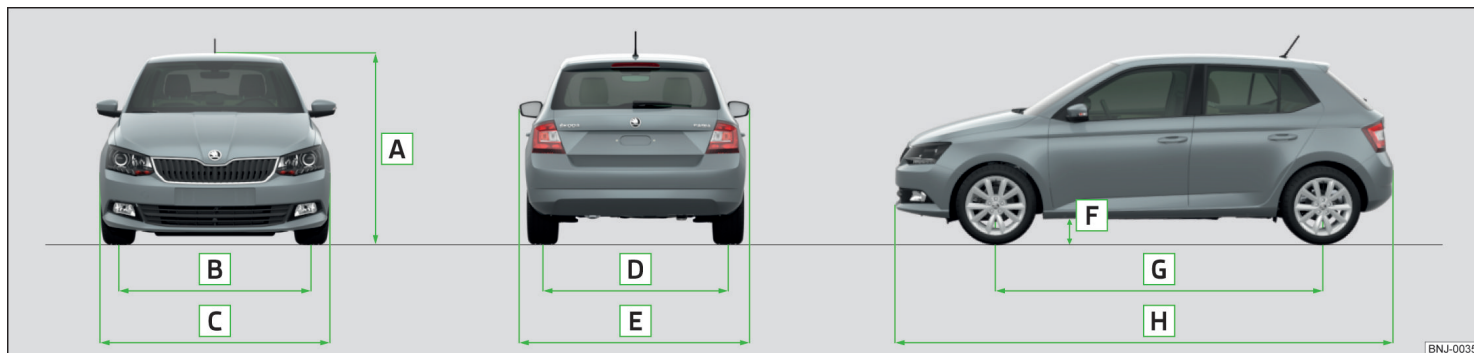


Fig. 198 Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions by operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 198 Specification			Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	Height	Basic dimension	1467	1467
		Vehicles with off-road package	1482	1482
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1452	1452
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1463	1463
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1457	1457
C	Width		1732	1732
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1457	1457
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1451	1451
E	Width including exterior mirrors		1958	1958
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	133	135
		Vehicles with off-road package	141	143
		Vehicles with SPORT package	118	120
G	Wheelbase		2470	2470
H	Length		3992	4257

Departure angle



Fig. 199
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 199

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

Departure angle

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

» Fig. 199	Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	14.6	14.6
B	17.6	13.1

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

The values specified have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.0 I/44 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
44/5000-6000	95/3000-4300	3/999

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5
Top speed (km/h)		160
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		15.7
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1055-1160
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	800
	Gradients up to 8 %	1000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		520

1.0 I/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
55/6200	95/3000-4300	3/999

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)		172	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		14.7	14.9
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1055-1160	1079-1184
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	800	800
	Gradients up to 8 %	1000	1000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		520	530

1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm ³)
66/4400-5400	160/1400-3500	4/1197

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)		182	185
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.9	11.0
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1109-1214	1133-1238
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1000	1000
	Gradients up to 8 %	1100	1100
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		550	560

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
81/4600-5600	175/1400-4000	4/1197

Performance and weights		Fabia MG6	Fabia DSG7	Fabia Combi MG6	Fabia Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		196	196	199	199
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		9.4	9.4	9.6	9.6
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration		1129-1234	1154-1259	1153-1258	1178-1283
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100	1100	1100	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1100	1100	1100	1100
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		560	570	570	580

1.4 I/66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
66/3000-3250	230/1750-2500	3/1422

Performance and weights	Fabia MG5	Fabia DSG7	Fabia Combi MG5	Fabia Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	182	182	184	184
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.1	11.1	11.3	11.3
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1156-1261	1186-1291	1180-1285	1210-1315
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12 %	1100	1100	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1200	1200	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	570	590	590	600

1.4 I/77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
77/3500-3750	250/1750-2500	3/1422

Performance and weights	Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)	193	196
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.1	10.2
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	1165-1270	1189-1294
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	580	590

Index

Numbers and Symbols

12-volt power outlet _____ 79

A

abroad
lead-free petrol _____ 149

Abroad
Headlights _____ 65

ABS
Function _____ 115
warning light _____ 36

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles _____ 140

Accessories _____ 137

Adjusting
Belt height _____ 15
Exterior mirrors _____ 70
headrests _____ 72
Interior mirror _____ 70
Seat _____ 72
Steering wheel _____ 10

Adjusting the seats _____ 9

Adjustment
Headlight beam _____ 60

Adjustments and technical changes
Spoiler _____ 139

Adjustments and technical modifications
Airbags _____ 139

Advance warning/emergency braking
Warning symbol _____ 42

Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents _____ 96

Airbag _____ 16
Adjustments and impairment of the airbag system _____ 139
Deactivating _____ 20
Deployment _____ 16
Front airbag _____ 17

Head airbag _____ 19
Indicator light _____ 36
Side airbag _____ 18
Switching off the front passenger airbag _____ 21

Airbag system _____ 16

Air conditioning _____ 95
Climatronic _____ 98
manual air conditioning _____ 98
Recirculated air mode _____ 96

Air outlet vents _____ 96

Alarm
Switching off _____ 54
Triggering _____ 54

Alcantara
cleaning _____ 146

Anti-lock Braking System _____ 115

Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating _____ 55
Trailer _____ 136

Anti-theft wheel bolts _____ 173

Armrest _____ 74

artificial leather _____ 146

Ashtray _____ 79

ASR
Indicator light _____ 35

Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 _____ 131
bar ball, Step 2 _____ 131

Assistance systems
ASR _____ 35
ESC _____ 35
Front Assistant _____ 121
MCB _____ 116
Parking aid _____ 117
Speed Limiter _____ 120

Assist system
ABS _____ 115

Assist systems _____ 115
ABS _____ 36
Cruise control system _____ 118

EDL _____ 116
ESC _____ 115
HBA _____ 116
HHC _____ 116
START-STOP _____ 124
TCS _____ 115
XDS _____ 116

Audio
see Infotainment _____ 4

Auto-check control _____ 44

Automatic driving lamp control _____ 62

Automatic gearbox
Selector lever-emergency unlocking _____ 181
Selector lever lock _____ 111
Starting-off and driving _____ 112
Tiptronic _____ 112
Using the selector lever _____ 111

Automatic gearbox modes _____ 111

Automatic load deactivation _____ 160

automatic transmission
selector lever lock defect _____ 111

Automatic transmission _____ 110
Kickdown _____ 112
malfunctions _____ 39
Selector lever lock _____ 111
Warning icon _____ 39
Warning messages _____ 39

B

Ball head
Check fitting _____ 132
Ready position _____ 130

Battery
In the remote control key _____ 179

Belts _____ 12

Belt tensioners _____ 15

Bicycle carrier _____ 91

Bonnet
Closing _____ 152
Opening _____ 152

Boot		Car computer		Checks	
Class N1 vehicles	89	see multifunction display	45	Statutory checks	137
Hooks	86	Care and maintenance	137	Children and safety	22
See Boot lid	56	Car park	109	Child safety	
Boot lid		Car park ticket holder	76	Side airbag	24
automatic locking	56	Carrier		Child safety lock	54
Closing	56	Roof rack	93	Child safety seat	
Opening	56	Cavity protection	144	Use of child safety seats	24
Brake booster	108	Central locking	49	child seat	
brake fluid		Problems	54	Use of ISOFIX child seats	25
specification	157	Central locking button	53	Child seat	
Brake fluid	156	Central warning light		Classification	24
Checking	157	Indicator light	34	ISOFIX	25
Information messages	34	Change		on the front passenger seat	23
Brake pedal (automatic transmission)		Bulb for daytime running lights (halogen spot-		TOP TETHER	26
Indicator light	38	light)	189	Chrome parts	
brakes		Bulb for indicator (halogen headlight)	188	see vehicle care	143
Driving in	113	Engine oil	153	Cigarette lighter	78
Brakes		Light bulb in tail light	192	cleaning	
Brake booster	108	Changing		chrome parts	143
Brake fluid	157	Fuses	182	Cleaning	
Braking and stabilisation systems	115	Fuses in the dash panel	183	Alcantara	146
Handbrake	108	Fuses in the engine compartment	185	and maintaining belts	147
Information messages	34	Licence plate light bulb	191	artificial leather	146
Warning light	34	Wheels	170	headlight glasses	144
Brakes and parking	107	Changing a wheel		materials	146
Braking		Preparation	170	natural leather	146
Information for braking	107	Removing and fitting a wheel	171	plastic parts	142
Breakdown kit	173	Subsequent steps	171	seats covers of the electrically heated seats	147
Break recommendation		Charging a vehicle battery	159	wheels	144
See Fatigue detection	126	Check		Cleaning safety	
Bulbs		Fit ball head properly	132	belt	147
Replacing	186	Checking		Cleaning seat	
Button CAR		Battery electrolyte level	159	covers	147
see Infotainment	4	Brake fluid	157	Cleaning the interior	
C		Coolant level	156	artificial leather	146
Car care		Engine oil	154	Seat covers	147
Jack	144	Oil level	154	Cleaning the outside of the vehicle	
		Windscreen washer fluid	153	Decorative films	143

EDL	116	Engine oil	153	fuel	
Electrical power windows		change	153	lead-free petrol	149
Button in the rear doors	58	Checking	154	Fuel	148
Electric power windows		Replenishing	155	Diesel	150
Operational faults	58	Warning icon	40	Fuel gauge	32
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	116	EPC		Indicator light	37
Electronic immobilizer	103	Warning light	36	refer to Fuel	148
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	115	ESC		Refuelling	148
Emergency		Function	115	fuel consumption	195
Changing a wheel	170	Indicator light	35	Fuel reserve	
Hazard warning light system	64	Exhaust inspection system		Indicator light	37
Jump-starting	176	Warning light	36	Fuses	
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	180			Assignment	182
Locking the driver's door	180			Assignment of fuses in the dash panel	183
Selector lever-unlocking	181			Changing	182
Switch off the engine by pressing a button	106			Colour coding	182
Towing the vehicle	177			Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	185
Towing the vehicle using the tow hitch	179			Fuses in the engine compartment	
Tyre repair	173			Assignment	185
Unlocking the driver's door	180				
Unlocking the tailgate	181				
Emergency equipment					
Fire extinguisher	168				
First aid kit	167				
Jack	168				
Reflective Vest	167				
Vehicle tool kit	168				
Warning triangle	167				
emergency wheel	169				
Emissions	195				
Engine					
Starting the engine	106				
Engine compartment	150				
Brake fluid	157				
Overview	152				
Vehicle battery	157				
Engine number	194				
engine oil					
specification	154				

HBA	116	MAXI DOT display	45	Switch off the ignition	104
Head airbag	19	Multifunction display	45	Switch on the ignition	104
Headlight cleaning system		Operation	43	Unlocking	50
Headlight cleaning system	69	Outside temperature	44	Keys in the door	
Headlights		Service interval display	48	Power windows	56
Bulb arrangement	186	Infotainment	4		
Driving abroad	65	Instrument cluster	29	L	
Headlight cleaning system	69	Auto-check control	44	Lamp failure	
Headrests	72	Counter for distance driven	32	Indicator symbol	41
Adjust height	72	Display	31	Lamps	
Headrest,		Fuel gauge	32	Indicator symbol	41
removing and installing	73	Overview	30	Leather	
heater		Revolution counter	30	Natural leather care	146
Rear window	66	Speedometer	31	LEAVING HOME	63
Heater		Temperature gauge	31	Lever	
Recirculated air mode	96	Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery	33	Main beam	62
Heating	95	Warning icons	38	Turn signal	62
Control elements	97	Warning lights	33	Levers	
Exterior mirrors	70	Interior care	145	Windscreen wipers	68
Seats	73	Natural leather	146	Light	
HHC	116	interior light		Cockpit	65
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	116	Front	65	COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	63
Hitch	129	Interior monitor	55	Fog lights with CORNER function	63
Drawback load	129	ISOFIX	25	Lighting	
Hooks	86			Luggage compartment	84
Horn	28	J		Lights	
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	116	Jack	168	Automatic driving lamp control	62
		Maintenance	144	Daylight running	61
I		Jacking points		Fog lights	63
Ice scrapers	143	Raise vehicle	172	Hazard warning light system	64
Ignition lock	104	Jump-starting	176	Headlight flasher	62
Immobilizer	103			Headlight range adjustment	60
Individual settings		K		Low beam	60
Locking	53	KESSY		Main beam	62
Unlocking	53	Locking	52	parking lights	60
Inertia reel	15	Unlocking	52	Parking lights	65
Information system	43	Key		Rear fog light	63
Door warning	44	Locking	50	Replacing bulbs	186
Gear recommendation	44	Start the engine	104	Switching on and off	60
		Stopping the engine	104		

Turn signal	62
Warning lights	33
Lock / unlock steering lock	
Key	103
Lock / unlock the steering lock	
Starter button	105
Locking	
Individual settings	53
KESSY	52
Key	50
Remote control	50
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside	53
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	
Emergency	180
Low beam	60
Luggage compartment	84
Cover	87
Emergency unlocking	181
Fastening elements	85
Fixing nets	85
Flexible storage compartment	89
Lighting	84
Storage compartments under the floor	88
Unlocking the tailgate	181
Variable loading floor	89
Luggage compartment cover	87
Other positions	87
Roll-up cover	88
Luggage Storage	
12-volt power outlet	79
Roll-up cover	88
Storage compartments	86
M	
Main beam	62
Warning light	38
Maintenance	
see vehicle care	142

Manual air conditioning	
Operating elements	98
Recirculated air mode	96
Manual gear changing	
see Gear changing	109
MAXI DOT display	45
Operation	43
MAXI DOT see	
MAXI DOT display	45
Maximum	
permissible weights	194
Maximum speed	198
Mechanical windows	59
Opening and closing	59
Media	
see Infotainment	4
Memory	46
Mirror	
Exterior mirrors	70
Make-up	67
Mirror Link	
see Infotainment	4
Mirrors	
Interior mirror	70
Modifications	137
Modifications and technical alterations	
Service	138
Motor	
Information messages	40
Motor oil	
Indicator symbol	40
Multi-collision brake	116
Multifunction display	
Functions	45
Information	46
Memory	46
Operation	43
Multimedia holder	80

N	
N1	89
Nameplate	194
Nets	85
Notes for driving with tyre repaired	175
Notes on using wheels	161

O	
Oil	
Information messages	40
see Engine oil	154
Oil pressure	
Information messages	40
Onboard computer	
see multifunction display	45
Operating weight	195
Operation in winter	
Diesel fuel	150
Vehicle battery	159
Original accessories	138
Outside temperature	44
Overview	
Engine compartment	152
Warning icons	38
Warning lights	33

P	
Parking	109
Parking aid	117
Automatic system activation when moving forward	118
Function	117
parking lights	60
Park the vehicle	
see Parking	109
Part replacement	137

Seat features	73	spare wheel	169	START STOP	
Seats		change	169	Information messages	126
Armrest	74	instructions	169	Start the engine	
Headrests	72	Speed controller		Key	104
Heating	73	Indicator light	38	Steering lock (engine start push-button)	
Rear seat	75	Speed Limiter	120	Warning light	34
Seat backrests	74	Operation	120	Steering wheel	10
Seats and headrest	71	Operation description	121	Stop	
Secure variable loading		Speed Limiter		see Parking	109
floor	91	Indicator light	38	Stopping the engine	
see Automatic gearbox		Speedometer	31	Key	104
Manual gear shifting on the multifunction		See speedometer	31	Storage	76
steering wheel	112	Speed symbol		compartment beneath the front seat	82
see Instrument cluster		see Wheels	164	storage compartment	
see Instrument cluster	29	Spoiler	139	Glasses compartment	81
Selector lever		Staring engine		on the front passenger side	82
Refer to Selector lever	111	Jump-starting	176	Storage compartment	
Selector lever lock		START-STOP	124	in the doors	77
Indicator light	38	Jump-starting	176	in the front arm rest	81
Service	138	Operating conditions for the system	124	in the front centre console	77
Service interval display	48	operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox	125	in the rear centre console	84
setting		operation in vehicles with manual gearbox	125	on the dash panel	78
Lower position of the variable loading floor	90	system-related automatic start-up	126	on the side of the front seat	77
Setting	33	Warning icon	42	Storage compartments	76
seats and headrests	71	START-STOPP		Storage pockets on the front seats	83
Upper position of the variable loading floor	89	Manually deactivating/activating the system	126	sun visors	67
Setting the	33	Starter button		Sun visors	67
Side airbag	18	Loc / unlock the steering lock	105	Switching lights on and off	60
SmartGate		Problems with the engine start	107	Switching off the engine	
connection	101	Start or stop the engine by pressing a button	105	Starter button	106
Password	101	Switching off the engine	106	Switch off the ignition	
Settings	101	Switch off the ignition	106	Key	104
Smart Gate		Switch on the ignition	106	Starter button	106
Website	101	Starting and stopping the engine using the key	103	Switch on the ignition	
Snow chains	165	Starting engine		Key	104
Sockets		Jump-starting	176	Starter button	106
12 V	79	Starting the engine			
Spare		Starter button	106		
change	169	Start or stop the engine by pressing a button	105		

T

Tailgate	55
-----------------------	----

Taking care of your vehicle					
Automatic car wash system	141				
High-pressure cleaner	141				
Washing by hand	141				
Wash system	141				
TCS					
Operation	115				
Warning light	35				
Technical data	194				
Tiptronic	112				
Tools	168				
TOP TETHER	26				
Towing	177				
Towing a trailer	135				
Towing device					
Accessories	133				
Description	129				
Operation and maintenance	145				
Towing eye					
Front	178				
Rear	179				
Towing protection	55				
Traction Control System (TCS)	115				
Trailer	134				
13-pin socket	134				
connect and disconnect	134				
Loading	135				
Safety eye	134				
Towing a trailer	135				
Trailer operation	129				
Transmission					
Warning messages	39				
Transport					
Luggage compartment	84				
Roof rack	93				
Transporting	76				
Transporting children safely	22				
Triangle	167				
Turning signal system					
Warning light	37				
Turn signal	62				
Turn signal system					
Warning light	37				
Tyre					
Damage	163				
Explanation of the labelling	164				
see wheels	164				
Tyre load-bearing capacity					
see Wheels	164				
Tyre pressure	162				
Warning light	37				
Tyre pressure monitor					
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring	127				
Tyre pressure monitoring	127				
Display	37				
Infotainment display	128				
Save tyre pressure values	127				
Save tyre pressure values - button	128				
Save tyre pressure values - Infotainment	128				
Tyre repair					
General notes	174				
Preparations	175				
Pressure test	175				
Sealing and inflating the tyre	175				
Tyres	161				
new	113				
Tyre pressure	162				
Wear and tear	162				
Wear indicators	163				
Tyre size	164, 165				
see wheels	164, 165				
Unlocking					
Individual settings	53				
KESY	52				
Key	50				
Remote control	50				
Unlocking and locking	49				
Used vehicles					
Acceptance and recycling	140				
Useful equipment					
Ashtray	79				
Car park ticket holder	76				
Cigarette lighter	78				
Clothes hook	82				
Cup holders	78				
Glasses compartment	81				
Multimedia holder	80				
Storage compartment	76				
Useful Features					
12-volt power outlet	79				
Using the information system	43				
Using the selector lever	111				
V					
Variable loading floor	89				
Inserting	90				
Lower position	90				
Removing	90				
Upper position	89				
Vehicle battery					
Automatic load deactivation	160				
Charge level indicator	33				
Charging	159				
Checking the battery electrolyte level	159				
Cover	158				
Disconnecting and reconnecting	160				
Operation in winter	159				
Replacing	160				
Safety instructions	157				
Warning icon	39				

vehicle care	
chrome parts	143
Vehicle care	
Alcantara	146
Artificial leather	146
Cavity protection	144
Cleaning vehicle exterior	141
Cleaning wheels	144
Decorative films	143
Door locking cylinder	144
Headlight glasses	144
Interior care	145
Maintenance	142
Materials	146
Natural leather	146
Plastic parts	142
Polishing vehicle paint work	142
Rubber seals	143
Safety belt	147
Seat covers	147
Under-body protections	145
washing	140
Vehicle condition	
see Auto-check control	44
Vehicle data sticker	194
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate	
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate	194
Vehicle dimensions	196
Vehicle height	196
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	194
Vehicle length	196
Vehicle tool kit	168
Vehicle width	196
Vest	
Placement of the reflective vest	167
VIN	
Vehicle Identification Number	194
Visibility	66
Visors	
see front sun visors	67

W

Warning at excessive speeds	47
Warning icons	38
Warning indicator of a low temperature	
Warning symbol	42
Warning lights	33
Warning symbols	
see Warning lights	33
see Warning symbols	38
Warning triangle	167
Washing	
Automatic car wash system	141
by hand	141
High-pressure cleaner	141
Washing vehicles	140
Waste container	80
Water	
Driving through	113
Weather conditions	137
Wheel bolts	
Anti-theft wheel bolts	173
Caps	171
Loosening and tightening	172
wheels	
spare wheel	169
Wheels	
Age of wheels	161
Changing	170
Driving style	162
Full trim	170
General information	161
Load index	164
Snow chains	165
Speed symbol	164
Storage of wheels	161
Tyre damage	163
Tyre pressure	162
Tyre size	164, 165
Tyre wear	162

Tyre wear indicator	163
Unidirectional tyres	164
Wheel balance	162
Wheels exchange	163
Winter tyres	165

Wi-Fi

Password	101
Settings	101
Website	101

Window wiper

Replacing the rear window wiper blade	182
---------------------------------------	-----

Windscreen washer fluid

Checking	153
Replenishing	153
Warning icon	42
Winter	153

Windscreen washers

Windscreen washers	68
--------------------	----

Windscreen washer system

	153
--	-----

Windscreen wipers

operation	68
Replacing the windscreen wipers	181
Windscreen washer fluid	153

Windscreen wipers and washers

	67
--	----

Winter operation

De-icing windows	143
Snow chains	165

Winter tyres

See Wheels	165
------------	-----

Winter use

Winter tyres	165
--------------	-----

Wiper blades

Service position of the windscreen wiper arms	181
---	-----

Wiper interval

	68
--	----

Wipers

Maintaining wiper blades	145
--------------------------	-----

X

XDS	116
------------	-----

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

- › Easy content navigation
- › Easy content reading
- › Full text search through the entire manual
- › Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked with the symbol .

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Fabia anglicky 10.2014
S58.5610.02.20
6V0012720AB



6V0012720AB